

A  
COMPANION READER

TO

"HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH."

BY

F. J. ROWE, M.A.

AND

W. T. WEBB, M.A.

---

CALCUTTA:  
THACKER, SPINK AND CO.  
Publishers to the University.

1878.

CALCUTTA

PRINTED BY THACKER, SPINK AND CO.

## PREFACE.

---

CONSIDERING the number of Reading Books and Selections—many of them cheap and good—that are now available for Schools in India, some explanation is required of what has led to the publication of this work. Upon the Calcutta University's discontinuing to prescribe Text-books in English for the Entrance Examination, it was felt that many teachers were left somewhat in the dark as to what books should be read and what line should be taken in the teaching of English. Books of Selections however were soon forthcoming to take the place of the old Entrance Course, but, in the absence of any definite information as to the style of question likely to be set, these Extracts were in many schools studied in the same servile method of "Paraphrase and Allusion" that the abolition of the Entrance Course had been intended to prevent. The Compilers think they may fairly credit their former work, "Hints on the Study of English," with having been of considerable use in guiding many bewildered students to a more correct estimate of what the Examiners in English might reasonably require of them. It has been since represented that the "Hints" would be made much more complete and useful, if they were supplemented by a book of Selections from English Authors with short notes to illustrate and exemplify in detail the principles that are there laid down. The aim, then, of this Companion Reader is to show how to apply the "Hints" in practice, and to indicate in an exact and definite manner how a passage of English Prose may be best studied by an Entrance class, so that, while meeting the requirements of the Examiners, students may be taught how to take a wider and firmer grasp of English idiom and phraseology. None of the Readers in general use supply any detailed directions on these points.

The notes have been made, as far as possible, *suggestive*, and difficulties have been pointed out rather than explained. This book will be of no help to a student who will not think and work for himself; and to "cram" the notes would be useless, if not

impossible. The passages selected, moreover, differ from those in any Reader that is ordinarily to be met with, in being all simple in style, upon easy subjects, and in the language of the present day. Each extract is somewhat longer than is usual in similar compilations, to avoid, as far as may be, a confusion of many different styles. No poetry has been inserted: it is notorious that the disproportionately large amount of poetry generally studied by beginners in English has been mainly to blame for the strange mixture, half poetry, half prose, which so frequently disfigures the style of many otherwise excellent essays and letters in English written by natives of India. Such poetry as is useful for learning by heart, may be found in almost any ordinary Reading-book; this work is meant to aid a young student in handling simple English prose.

These considerations and the suggestions of many who have had large experience in education in India have convinced the Compilers that there is still room for a work like the present. If it goes any way towards making a student of English depend upon himself to solve a difficulty rather than upon his teacher, it will have answered its purpose.

The Compilers have to express their best thanks to the Delegates of the Clarendon Press, Oxford, the publishers of "The Norman Conquest," for their permission to extract a passage from that book, and to Dr. Freeman personally for his kindly-expressed readiness to further the work undertaken in this Reader and in "Hints on the Study of English."

CALCUTTA;

December, 1875.

---

# CONTENTS.

—:O:—

|  | Page. |
|--|-------|
| PREFACE . . . . .                                    | iii   |
| INTRODUCTION . . . . .                               | vii   |
| I.—Cowper's Letters . . . . .                        | 1     |
| II.—Southey's Life of Nelson:                        |       |
| Nelson's Early Life . . . . .                        | 29    |
| Siege of Santa Cruz . . . . .                        | 38    |
| III.—White's Natural History of Selborne . . . . .   | 46    |
| IV.—Prescott's History of the Conquest of Mexico:    |       |
| Expulsion from Mexico . . . . .                      | 61    |
| V.—Prescott's Life of Charles V:                     |       |
| Charles's Life at Yusto . . . . .                    | 74    |
| VI.—Freeman's Old English History:                   |       |
| The Reign of King Alfred . . . . .                   | 90    |
| VII.—Freeman's Norman Conquest:                      |       |
| The Battle of Senlao . . . . .                       | 102   |
| VIII.—Extract from Holmes's Guardian Angel . . . . . | 125   |
| NOTES . . . . .                                      | 135   |

## ON THE TEACHING OF ENGLISH IN INDIAN SCHOOLS

---

THAT the method usually followed in the teaching of English in Indian schools is, in many respects, unsatisfactory, has long been the opinion not only of the writers, but of many others engaged in educational work in this country. To point out as plainly as possible some of the particulars in which it is manifest that improvement might be made, is the aim of this Introduction. The defects alluded to are peculiar to India, and it would be difficult to find anything to correspond with them in schools of the like class in England or elsewhere. And this is natural, for the English language is being taught here under conditions that have no parallel in the history of teaching. We have English, as a living language, spoken in the merchant's office and the Court of Justice; at the same time it is being learnt in many schools in much the same way as are the dead languages—Latin and Greek—in English 'public schools.\* Within the last ten years, schools have sprung up by thousands all over the country, and masters have been found for them. These masters have, in most cases, been educated at a College or High School affiliated to the Calcutta University, and have passed at least the First Arts Examination. After being converted, without previous training or experience, from First Arts students into teachers, they naturally follow in the school-room in teaching English the plan which they have seen adopted by their Professors in the College class-room, and, instead of teaching, they

---

\* An odd mixture of colloquial and literary expressions, (e.g., "I think I'll spread the umbrella at this juncture"), is one of the outgrowths of this double process.

*lecture.* Now, in the case of large College classes, consisting of fifty or sixty students, who have to get up a lengthy prescribed course, the lecture system, i.e., the giving of exhaustive notes to be copied down without comment and to be learnt by heart at home, is certainly the easiest way of getting through the work within the two years allowed. The evils of this method, even to advanced students, need not here be enlarged upon: suffice it that, when the classes are large and unwieldy, and the Courses to be read so long as they generally are, it is, perhaps, the only feasible plan. But if in the case of young men eighteen years of age or more, this note-giving begets little sound and practical knowledge of English for every-day use,—what then must be its effect upon young boys from twelve to sixteen years old, who, having no Course in English prescribed for them, are only too ready to catch without discrimination at any grammatical or literary nicety, however trivial, which they imagine may help them to pass? The effect is this, that most Entrance candidates can give a cut and dry explanation of any passage in English which they have read in class, can derive all the words, giving Greek and Frisian roots, and are prepared with a fluent criticism on the “excellencies and defects” of their Author’s style. But ask them to tell the meaning of a passage they have not seen before, or to write a short letter in English, and they are utterly at a loss, and their production is generally a failure as regards sense, idiom, and even simple grammar. Never having been expected to puzzle out the meaning of a sentence for themselves, and having no rote-learnt notes to fall back upon, they seem to have no idea how they should set about the interpretation of a difficult passage. They can, to some extent, explain the separate words of the sentence, but frequently their so-called explanation is nothing more than the substitution of other words of a like or greater difficulty, which are often utterly inappropriate to the context. Thus the sentence,

"He was induced by personal considerations to decline the contest" will be explained. "He was drawn in by individual respects to refuse the engagement:" and the boy is quite satisfied that he has done all that should be expected of him towards making the meaning clear. For this is the kind of explanation that he too often gets from his teacher in class, the words being paraphrased and the meaning disregarded.

It will be seen that, under this system, the abolition of the old Entrance Course has not answered the end that it was intended to answer; it has not weaned young students of English from depending exclusively upon notes given in the class-room, nor taught them to think and work for themselves. Mr. Hales has well said:—"The great function of education is not so much to give information as to put the pupil in the way of getting it and recognizing and using it justly when he has it. . . . By all means let the pupil 'ask'; but let him first ask himself."

It may be well here to give a brief sketch of the way in which a student should, in the writers' opinion, be taught to deal with a piece of English prose from his School Reader.

**Preparation.**—*The students should prepare their literature lesson at home, and should be expected to come into class with the meaning of every difficult word looked out in the dictionary. To ensure this being done, they might be required to keep a small note-book, in which to set down the words of the lesson and their principal meanings. This should be shown, when required, to the master, who should point out which particular meaning of each word is suited to the context, and the boy should be allowed to refer to it in class. It would thus form a kind of special dictionary for the extracts studied. We have spoken above of English being taught in India somewhat as Latin or Greek is in England; but to try to learn a piece of Livy or Xenophon without opening a dictionary, is an idea that*



would never enter the head of any English school-boy who took an interest in his work. Now, most Entrance candidates do take an interest in learning English—at any rate so much of it as will enable them to pass the examination; and yet not one boy in ten possesses, and not one boy in a hundred regularly uses, an English dictionary. This is a fatal error, and one which has been pointed out again and again. We would most strongly insist that every Headmaster of an English-teaching school should make the possession and regular use of a dictionary a condition of entrance into at least the two upper classes of his school.\* To use a dictionary ever so little goes some way towards making a boy “first ask himself.”

Reading.—The pupil should be required to read out slowly and distinctly the part which he has to explain. Few students in our Colleges have any notion of intelligent reading aloud, that is, of using the mind as well as the eyes and tongue. What is generally heard is an expressionless monotone, without any heed to the modulation of the voice and with an utter neglect of all pauses except full stops. Every experienced teacher knows how important towards the quick understanding of a passage is attention to such seemingly trivial matters as raising and lowering the voice, pausing at the commas, and correct emphasis. To read a passage perfectly, the reader must, of course, comprehend it perfectly; but the mere attempt to read it well will help in a great measure to make its meaning plain.† The master should show a boy exactly where his mistakes in modulation and emphasis lie, before proceeding with questions or explanations. It often happens that for the teacher to read aloud to his class an involved passage, lets in a flood of light upon the most obscure sentences.

---

\* Chamber's Etymological Dictionary may be recommended as both good and cheap.

† *Possunt, quia posse videntur*; “They are able because they seem to be able:” a maxim that holds good in the class-room as well as elsewhere.

**Explanation.**—The whole passage having been thus correctly read aloud, the boy should be asked to shut his book, and give in his own words his idea of the general sense conveyed. It is astonishing how little general notion even a First Arts student gets of the gist of a passage, taken as a whole, from his first reading of it. To pronounce the words correctly seems as much as he can do at first sight; and he requires two or three readings to catch even a glimmer of the meaning. This plan of making the pupil explain rather than the teacher will, no doubt, take a longer time; but though the amount of reading got through in class may seem small, what is done will be done thoroughly.

Again, the method alluded to above of taking individual words in a sentence and giving synonyms for them one after the other, is very common and very harmful. The student should be required to give equivalents for none but the most difficult words. Paraphrasing—a good exercise, if properly conducted—has come to mean, in India, the mechanical substitution of one word for another all through the sentence, the meaning being often utterly sacrificed in the process. In view of this, the University Examiners are directed that “Paraphrasing should be discouraged.” We have tried to point out in the Notes at the end of this book the kind of question that a teacher should ask his class, after the reading and general explanation of the passage have been gone through. It will be seen that advantage has been taken of each idiomatic expression, as it occurs, to draw the student’s attention to similar forms of idiom or word-usage. In fact, each peculiarity of this kind should be made the starting-point for an exposition of the principle exemplified, or for giving exhaustively any phrases that present similar difficulties.

These Notes necessarily leave very much for the master to do, in teaching even the extracts of this book. If a note, for instance, brings forward any parallel idiomatic phrase or point of verbal usage, the teacher

would do well to supply the pupil with a sentence introducing the word or phrase in question, so as to give the class a clear idea as to its correct use. Thus, in the Notes (p. 37, l. 34), we have

*Rated him, i.e., entered him on the ship's register. Give another and more usual meaning of the term.*

Here the teacher might set before his pupil the sentence "*I rated him soundly for his carelessness,*" or sentences introducing "*At any rate,*" "*at this rate,*" and so forth. It would be a good thing if such idiomatic sentences were collected during the lesson, and afterwards translated into the vernacular as a class exercise. The characteristic differences between English and vernacular idiom would thus be clearly brought to light. This is a very important point; since all, or nearly all, the mistakes made by Native students in speaking and writing English arise from misapprehension on this subject; vernacular expressions being translated by them literally, and therefore, in most cases, unidiomatically.

There are a few more points to be noticed which had better come under separate heads.

(a). *Derivation.*—It will be remarked that, in the Notes, little has been said on Derivation. A not uncommon fault has been to cram the young student's head with a mass of out-of-the-way roots, useful to him only for the moment, and never applied to other words beyond the limits of the particular lesson. A score or two of Latin, and a somewhat less number of Greek roots, should be learnt, once for all, by heart, and a beginner should not be burdened with any more. Every now and then he will come across some word from other sources whose history is peculiarly instructive, and then its derivation or change of meaning should be carefully traced out. Most words of this kind occurring in this Reader have, it is believed, been remarked upon in the Notes. But even the commonest Latin and Greek roots are of little use, if the student, after having learnt them, is not taught how

to apply his learning. The following is the way in which a question on Derivation is generally answered in examination :

*Subdue*—from *sub* and *duco*, to lead ; = to conquer.

A more unsatisfactory style of answer it would be hard to find. It shows nothing except that the student has learnt by rote a list of Latin words and their meanings in English. The answer should have been,

*Subdue*—from Lat. *sub*, under, and *duc*-, lead ; = lead under, hence 'conquer'; conquered prisoners being *led under* spears placed crosswise.

This teaches something, and, like every true lesson, is interesting as well. Unless a boy is taught to follow the history of the word from its original source, noting any changes which it has undergone, and so stamping the present force deeply on the mind—Derivation is worth but little.

(b). *Grammar*.—Some teachers assert that no rule should be learnt from the Grammar itself until an illustration of it has been met with in the Reading-book. There is no doubt that the committing to memory of formal rules of Grammar, without any attempt to apply them practically, is a very common defect. In the University Examinations, any question taken directly from a class-book in general use—such as, "Give the rules for forming plurals in English," or, "Define the terms of rhetoric,"—is, almost invariably, answered with correctness, while in the very next page the rules just quoted will be broken with perfect indifference. Such shallow study is sheer waste of time and, as such, is worse than useless.

Moreover, from learning the rules of grammar as a distinct lesson apart from the literature that is being studied, students have gained an entirely false notion as to what the true business of grammar is. Grammar is a collection of rules of speech drawn up from observing how the great writers of ancient and of our own days handle the language, thus showing "what the language is,

not what it *should be*." In many instances, perfect unanimity of usago does not exist, and the object of grammar is to state concisely what form of expression is employed by a majority of these writers. But the fact that the majority are agreed on any particular point does not necessarily prove that the others are wrong and unreasonable in differing from them. It is ludicrous to hear a young Entrance Class boy roundly declare that authors like De Quincey are guilty of a great inaccuracy when they write "*the lesser of two evils*," because Grammars say "Double comparatives are to be avoided." If we come across what looks like an error in a writer recognized as a standard authority, our duty is not to assert offhand that it is one of his "defects," but rather to find out what reason he had for leaving the beaten path; and we shall generally see that his reason is sufficient. It is, we repeat, from the writings of the great masters of English that the rules of English Grammar spring, and these writers and not the compilers of Grammars fix what is good English. It is high time that boys were taught that a careful study of the text of standard authors is a more trustworthy guide to a sound knowledge of English than any formal rules whatsoever.

One more point may be mentioned under this head. More attention is often paid to the substance of the passage studied, to the dates, allusions, and outlying facts connected with it, than to the forms of expression and idiomatic peculiarities. Thus, after having read the "*Vision of Mirza*" as a lesson in class, a student will be able to give a detailed description of the various scenes in the allegory, but will be ignorant of all the note-worthy points in the passage, and even unable to parse many of the words. The Notes at the end of this book are intended to show how both important and interesting lessons on words and idioms may be drawn from even the simplest piece of English prose.

(c). *Learning by heart*.—In "*Hints on the Study of*

English," p. 184, this point has been urged at length. Nothing more need be added to the advice there given, that the English custom of learning by heart a part of a previous lesson should be adopted in India, and that each day's work should commence with 'Repetition.' On this subject, it has been remarked by a high educational authority in England '*I consider this most important; I am surprised that it is not done in India.*'"

(d.) *Composition.*—We have left this most important point till the last. In the Entrance Examination papers of this year, two questions were set requiring the candidate to write a page or two of straightforward, everyday English, and there is little doubt that any one who could have answered those two questions fairly would have been almost certain of passing. Reference has been made to the teaching of Latin in schools in England. In no English school is an attempt made to teach the Classics without frequent exercises in composition. Whatever may be thought of the usefulness of Verse composition, there are no two opinions as to the value of Prose. We cannot too strongly urge upon the masters of English-teaching schools, that, until they give their classes, at least three times a week, exercises in English composition, and correct each student's exercise in his hearing, as is done with Latin composition in England, there is little hope of any great improvement in the English of their scholars. The great point in composition is to require not new and striking ideas so much as correct language, and, with that view, to set for original writing only such subjects as are perfectly familiar to the student's mind. It is idle to expect a boy fifteen or sixteen years of age to have thought much on so abstract a subject as "Making the best of things," or to be able in half an hour to write a theme upon "Knowledge is Power." The two questions already mentioned as occurring in the Entrance papers of 1875, were evidently framed to test the candidates' power of composing a page or two of simple English prose from ideas supplied by

the examiners. A business letter, a short description of a building or of some commonplace phenomenon or of a well-known fact of history—such are the subjects best suited for Entrance classes.

The value of translation into and from the vernacular has been spoken of in the "Hints." Far too little use is made of the vernaculars of India in the teaching of English; which is the more remarkable from the fact that one of the two examination papers in the "Second Language," (at least if the language taken be an Oriental one), always consists entirely of translation from English into the candidate's vernacular. It would 'pay,' therefore, for both subjects, for English as well as the 'Second Language,' if the student had weekly—it might be said *daily*—exercise in translation; not the bald and literal rendering of individual words, but a smooth and vigorous reproduction of the full meaning of the passage. This nothing but an exact and watchful study of the idiomatic differences of the two languages can ensure.

To conclude: it has been noticed, and with reason, that in the higher classes of our Colleges there is a marked absence of what may be called *scholarly accuracy*. Want of method in their general work, and, particularly, an inexact and slipshod style of criticism mark the answers of a large majority of candidates in the examination-room. This is the result, in a great measure, of the old text-book and note-learning system in the school classes. We believe that if attention be paid to the points we have briefly enumerated in this Introduction, a foundation will be laid of that accuracy of thought and expression known as "scholarship," to teach which should be the school-master's first aim, and which, in any work the student may afterwards put his hand to, will stand him in good stead.

---

A

# COMPANION READER

TO  
'HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH.'

---

## COWPER'S LETTERS.

---

TO THE REV. JOHN NEWTON.

USE OF AMUSEMENTS—WORTHLESSNESS OF EVERYTHING IN COMPARISON  
WITH THE LOVE OF GOD.

*May 3, 1780.*

DEAR SIR,—You indulge me in such a variety of subjects, and allow me such a latitude of excursion in this scribbling employment, that I have no excuse for silence. I am much obliged to you for swallowing such boluses as I send you, for the sake of my gilding, and verily believe I am the only man alive from whom they would be welcome to a palate like yours. I wish I could make them more splendid than they are, more alluring to the eye, at least, if not more pleasing to the taste; but my leaf gold is tarnished, and has received such a tinge from the vapours that are ever brooding over my mind, that I think it no small proof of your partiality to me that you will read my letters. I am not fond of long-winded metaphors; I have always observed that they halt at the latter end of their progress, and so does mine. I deal much in ink, indeed, but not such ink as is employed by poets and writers of essays. Mine is a harmless fluid, and guilty of no deceptions but such as may prevail without the least injury to the person imposed on. I draw mountains, valleys, woods, and streams, and ducks, and dab-chicks. I admire them myself, and Mrs. Unwin admires them; and her praise, and my praise put together, are fame enough for me. Oh! I could spend whole days and moonlight nights in feeding upon a lovely



prospect! My eyes drink the rivers as they flow. If every human being upon earth could think for one quarter of an hour as I have done for many years, there might perhaps be many miserable men among them, but not an unawakened one would be found from the Arctic to the Antarctic circle. At present, the difference between them and me is greatly to their advantage. I delight in baubles, and know them to be so; for rested in, and viewed without a reference to their Author, what is the earth, what are the planets, what is the sun itself but a bauble? Better for a man never to have seen them, or to see them with the eyes of a brute, stupid and unconscious of what he beholds than not to be able to say, "The Maker of all these wonders is my friend!" Their eyes have never been opened to see that they are trifles; mine have been, and will be till they are closed for ever. They think a fine estate, a large conservatory, a hot-house rich as a West Indian garden, things of consequence, visit them with pleasure, and muse upon them with ten times more. I am pleased with a frame of four lights, doubtful whether the few pines it contains will ever be worth a farthing; amuse myself with a greenhouse which Lord Bute's gardener could take upon his back, and walk away with; and when I have paid it the accustomed visit, and watered it, and given it air, I say to myself—"This is not mine, 'tis a plaything lent me for the present; I must leave it soon."

W. O.

## TO THE REV. JOHN NEWTON.

ESCAPE, ADVENTURES, AND RECAPTURE OF A TAME HARE.

August 21, 1780.

25 The following occurrence ought not to be passed over in silence, in a place where so few notable ones are to be met with. Last Wednesday night, while we were at supper, between the hours of eight and nine, I heard an unusual noise in the back parlour, as if one of the hares was entangled, and endeavouring to disengage herself. I was just going to rise from table when it ceased. In about five minutes, a voice on the outside of the parlour door inquired if one of my hares had got away. I immediately rushed into the next room, and found that my poor favourite Pass had made her escape. She had gnawed in

sunder the strings of the lattice work, with which I thought I had sufficiently secured the window, and which I preferred to any other sort of blind, because it admitted plenty of air. From thence I hastened to the kitchen, where I saw the redoubtable Thomas Freeman, who told me that having seen 5 her, jnst after she dropped into the street, he attempted to cover her with his hat, but she screamed out, and leaped directly over his head. I then desired him to pursne as fast as possible, and added Richard Coleman to the chase, as being nimbler, and carrying less weight than Thomas ; not expecting to 10 see her again, but desirons to learn, if possible, what becamo of her. In something less than an hour Richard returned, almost breathless, with the following acconnt: That soon after he began to run he left Tom behind him, and came in sight of a most numcrons hunt of men, women, children, and dogs; 15 that he did his best to keep back the dogs, and presently ont-stripped the crowd, so that the race was at last disputed between himself and Pass—she ran right through the town, and down the lane that leads to Dropshort—a little before she came to the house, he got the start and turned her: she 20 pushed for the town again, and soon after she entered it sought shelter in Mr. Wagstaff's tan-yard, adjoining to old Mr. Drake's—Sturge's harvest men were at supper, and saw her from the opposite side of the way. There she encountered the tan-pits full of water; and while she was struggling ont of ono pit, 25 and plunging into another and almost drowned, one of the men drew her out by the ears and secured her. She was then well washed in a bncket, to get the lime out of her coat, and brought home in a sack at ten o'clock.

This frolic cost us four shillings, but you may believe wo did 30 not grudge a farthing of it. The poor creatnre received only a little hurt in one of her claws, and in one of her ears, and is now almost as well as ever.

I do not call this an answer to your letter, but snch as it is I send it, presnmng upon that interest which I know you take 35 in my minutest concerns, which I cannot express better than in the words of Terence a little varied,—*Nihil mei a te alienum putas.*—Yours, my dear friend,

W. C.

TO JOSEPH HILL, Esq.

THOUGHTS FOR INFORMATION REGARDING RELATIVES—PENALTY OF  
LONGEVITY.

February 15, 1781.

MY DEAR FRIEND,—I am glad you were pleased with my report of so extraordinary a case. If the thought of versifying the decisions of our courts of justice had struck me while I had the honour to attend them, it would perhaps have been no difficult matter to have compiled a volume of such amusing and interesting precedents, which, if they wanted the eloquence of the Greek or Roman oratory, would have amply compensated that deficiency by the harmony of rhyme and metre.

Your account of my uncle and your mother gave me great pleasure. I have long been afraid to inquire after some in whose welfare I always feel myself interested, lest the question should produce a painful answer. Longevity is the lot of so few, and is so seldom rendered comfortable by the associations of good health and good spirits, that I could not very reasonably suppose either your relations or mine so happy in those respects as it seems they are. May they continue to enjoy those blessings so long as the date of life shall last. I do not think that in these costermonger days, as I have a notion Falstaff calls them, an antediluvian age is at all a desirable thing; but to live comfortably, while we do live, is a great matter, and comprehends in it everything that can be wished for on this side the curtain that hangs between time and eternity.

Farewell, my better friend than any I have to boast of, either among the Lords—or gentlemen of the House of Commons.

W. C.

TO THE REV. WILLIAM UNWIN.

COWPER GIVES AN ACCOUNT OF THE COMPOSITION AND PRINTING OF  
HIS FIRST VOLUME.

May 1, 1781.

Your mother says I *must* write, and *must* admits of no apology; I might otherwise plead that I have nothing to say, that I am weary, that I am dull, that it would be more convenient therefore for you, as well as for myself, that I should let it alone;

but all these pleas, and whatever pleas besides either disinclination, indolence, or necessity might suggest, are overruled, as they ought to be, the moment a lady adduces her irrefragable argument, *you must*. You have still, however, one comfort left, that what I must write, you may, or may not read, just as it shall please you; unless Lady Anne at your elbow should say you must read it, and then, like a true knight, you will obey without looking for a remedy.

In the press, and speedily will be published, in one volume octavo, price three shillings, Poems, by William Cowper, of the Inner Temple, Esq. You may suppose, by the size of the publication, that the greatest part of them have been long kept secret, because you yourself have never seen them: but the truth is, that they are most of them, except what you have in your possession, the produce of the last winter. Two-thirds of the compilation will be occupied by four pieces, the first of which sprung up in the month of December, and the last of them in the month of March. They contain, I suppose, in all about two thousand and five hundred lines: are known, or to be known in due time, by the names of *Table Talk—The Progress of Error—Truth—Expostulation*. Mr. Newton writes a Preface, and Johnson is the publisher. The principal, I may say the only, reason why I never mentioned to you, till now, an affair which I am just going to make known to all the world (if that Mr. All-the-world should think it worth his knowing) has been this,—that till within these few days I had not the honour to know it myself. This may seem strange, but it is true; for not knowing where to find underwriters who would choose to insure them, and not finding it convenient to a purse like mine to run any hazard, even upon the credit of my own ingenuity, I was very much in doubt for some weeks whether any bookseller would be willing to subject himself to an ambiguity that might prove very expensive in case of a bad market. But Johnson has heroically set all peradventures at defiance, and takes the whole charge upon himself. So ont I come. I shall be glad of my Translations from Vincent Bourne, in your next frank. My muse will lay herself at your feet immediately on her first public appearance.—Yours, my dear friend,

W. C.

TO JOSEPH HILL, Esq.

DESCRIPTION OF HIS STUDY,

June 25, 1785.

MY DEAR FRIEND,—I write in a nook that I call my *Boudoir*. It is a summer house not much bigger than a sedan chair, the door of which opens into the garden, that is now crowded with pinks, roses, and honeysuckles, and the window into my neighbour's orchard. It formerly served an apothecary, now dead, as a smoking room; and under my feet is a trap door, which once covered a hole in the ground, where he kept his bottles. At present, however, it is dedicated to sublimer uses. Having lined it with garden mats, and furnished it with a table and two chairs, here I write all that I write in summer time, whether to my friends or to the public. It is secure from all noise, and a refuge from all intrusion; for intruders sometimes trouble me in the winter evenings at Olney. But, thanks to my *Boudoir*, I can now hide myself from them. A poet's retreat is sacred. They acknowledge the truth of that proposition, and never presume to violate it.

The last sentence puts me in mind to tell you that I have ordered my volume to your door. My bookseller is the most dilatory of all his fraternity, or you would have received it long since. It is more than a month since I returned him the last proof, and consequently since the printing was finished. I sent him the manuscript at the beginning of last November, that he might publish while the town was full, and he will hit the exact moment when it is entirely empty. Patience, you will perceive, is in no situation exempted from the severest trials,—a remark that may serve to comfort you under the numberless trials of your own.

---

TO THE REV. WILLIAM UNWIN.

THUNDER STORM—FIRST ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE TRANSLATION OF HOMER.

July 27, 1785.

MY DEAR WILLIAM,—You and your party left me in a frame of mind that indisposed me much to company. I comforted myself with the hope that I should spend a silent day, in which I should find abundant leisure to indulge sensations which,

without an assured hope that you will be pleased also. We are now going to walk, and thus far I have written before I have received your letter. Friday—I must now be as compact as possible. When I began, I designed four sides, but my packet 5 being transformed into two single epistles, I can consequently afford you but three. I have filled a large sheet with animadversions upon Pope. I am proceeding in my translation—*Velis et remis, omnibus nervis*, as *Hindibras* has it; and if God give me health and ability, will put it into your hands when I see you 10 next. Mr —— has just left us. He has read my book, and, as if fearful that I had overlooked some of them myself, has pointed out to me all its beauties. I do assure you, tho man has a very acute discernment and a taste that I have no fault to find with. I hope that you are of the same opinion.

15 Adieu! May the blessing of God be upon you all. It is your mother's heart's wish and mine.—Yours ever,

W. C.

---

### TO LADY HESKETH,

PLEASURE IN RENEWING THEIR CORRESPONDENCE—PAST COURSE OF LIFE.

October 12, 1785.

MY DEAR COUSIN,—It is no new thing with you to give pleasure. But I will venture to say that you do not often give more than you gave me this morning. When I came down to breakfast, 20 and found upon the table a letter franked by my uncle, and when opening that frank I found that it contained a letter from you, I said within myself—"This is just as it should be. We are all grown young again, and the days that I thought I should see no more are actually returned." You perceive, therefore, that you 25 judged well when you conjectured that a line from you would not be disagreeable to me. It could not be otherwise than, as in fact it proved, a most agreeable surprise, for I can truly boast of an affection for you, that neither years, nor interrupted intercourse, have at all abated. I need only recollect how much I valued you 30 once, and with how much cause, immediately to feel a revival of the same value: if that can be said to revive, which at the most has only been dormant for want of employment. But I slander it when I say that it has slept. A thousand times have I recollected

in thousand scenes, in which our two selves have formed the whole of the drama, with the greatest pleasure; at times, too, when I had no reason to suppose that I should ever hear from you again. I have laughed with you at the Arabian Nights' Entertainment, which afforded us, as you well know, a fund of merriment that 5 deserves never to be forgot. I have walked with you to Netley Abbey, and have scrambled with you over hedges in every direction, and many other feats we have performed together, upon the field of my remembrance, and all within these few years. Should I say within this twelvemonth, I should not transgress the 10 truth. The hours that I have spent with you were among the pleasantest of my former days, and are therefore chronicled in my mind so deeply as to fear no erasure. Neither do I forget my poor friend Sir Thomas. I should remember him indeed, at any rate, on account of his personal kindness to myself; but the last 15 testimony that he gave of his regard for you endears him to me still more. With his uncommon understanding (for with many peculiarities he had more sense than any of his acquaintance), and with his generous sensibilities, it was hardly possible that he should not distinguish you as he has done. As it was the last, so it 20 was the best proof that he could give of a judgment that never deceived him, when he would allow himself leisure to consult it.

You say that you have often heard of me; that puzzles me. I cannot imagine from what quarter: but it is no matter; I must tell you, however, my cousin, that your information has been a 25 little defective. That I am happy in my situation is true; I live, and have lived these twenty years, with Mrs. Unwin, to whose affectionate care of me, during the far greater part of that time, it is, under Providence, owing that I live at all. But I do not account myself happy in having been for thirteen of those years 30 in a state of mind that has made all that care and attention necessary—an attention and a care that have injured her health, and which, had she not been uncommonly supported, must have brought her to the grave. But I will pass to another subject; it would be cruel to particularize only to give pain, neither would 35 I by any means give a sable hue to the first letter of a correspondence so unexpectedly renewed.

I am delighted with what you tell me of my uncle's good health. To enjoy any measure of cheerfulness at so late a day is much. But to have that late day enlivened with the vivacity of 40

10 youth, is much more, and in these post-diluvian times a rarity indeed. Happy for the most part are parents who have daughters. Daughters are not apt to outlive their natural affections, which a son has generally survived even before his boyish years are expired. I rejoice particularly in my uncle's felicity, who has three female descendants from his little person, who leave him nothing to wish for upon that head.

My dear cousin, dejection of spirits, which, I suppose, may have prevented many a man from becoming an author, made me  
10 one. I find constant employment necessary, and therefore take care to be constantly employed. Manual occupations do not engage the mind sufficiently, as I know by experience, having tried many. But composition, especially of verse, absorbs it wholly. I write, therefore, generally three hours in a morning,  
15 and in an evening I transcribe. I read also, but less than I write, for I must have bodily exercise, and therefore never pass a day without it.

You ask me where I have been this summer. I answer, at Olney. Should you ask me where I spent the last seventeen  
20 summers, I should still answer, at Olney. Ay, and the winters also; I have seldom left it, and, except when I attended my brother in his last illness, never, I believe, a fortnight together.

Adieu, my beloved cousin, I shall not always be thus nimble in reply, but shall always have great pleasure in answering you  
25 when I can.—Yours, my dear friend and cousin,

W. C.

---

### TO LADY HESKETH.

ACCOUNT OF HIS CIRCUMSTANCES—THANKS FOR OFFERS OF ASSISTANCE—  
HIS PERSONAL APPEARANCE.

OLNEY, November 9, 1784.

MY DEAREST COUSIN,—Whose last most affectionate letter has run in my head ever since I received it, and which I now sit down to answer two days sooner than the post will serve me. I thank you for it, and with a warmth for which I am sure you will  
30 give me credit, though I do not spend many words in describing it. I do not seek *new* friends, not being altogether sure that I should find them, but have unspeakable pleasure in being still beloved by an old one. I hope that now our correspondence has



suffered its last interruption; and that we shall go down together to the grave, chatting and chirping as merrily as such a scene of things as this will permit.

I am happy that my poems have pleased you. My volume has afforded me no such pleasure at any time, either while I was writing it, or since its publication, as I have derived from yours and my uncle's opinion of it. I make certain allowances for partiality, and for that peculiar quickness of taste with which you both relish what you like, and, after all drawbacks upon those accounts duly made, find myself rich in the measure of 10 your approbation that still remains. But above all, I honour John Gilpin, since it was he who first encouraged you to write. I made him on purpose to laugh at, and he served his purpose well; but I am now in debt to him for a more valuable acquisition than all the laughter in the world amounts to,—the recovery 15 of my intercourse with you, which is to me inestimable.

My benevolent and generous cousin, when I was once asked if I wanted any thing, and given delicately to understand that the inquirer was ready to supply all my occasions, I thankfully and civilly, but positively, declined the favour. I neither suffer, nor 20 have suffered any such inconveniences as I had not much rather endure, than come under obligations of that sort to a person comparatively with yourself a stranger to me. But to you I answer otherwise. I know you thoroughly, and the liberality of your disposition; and have that consummate confidence in the 25 sincerity of your wish to serve me, that delivers me from all awkward constraint, and from all fear of trespassing by acceptance. To you therefore I reply, yes. Whensoever, and whatsoever, and in what manner soever you please; and add moreover, that my affection for the giver is such, as will increase to me tenfold the 30 satisfaction that I shall have in receiving. It is necessary, however, that I should let you a little into the state of my finances that you may not suppose them more narrowly circumscribed than they are. Since Mrs. Unwin and I have lived at Olney, we have had but one purse, although during the whole of 35 that time till lately her income was nearly double mine. Her revenues indeed are now in some measure reduced, and do not much exceed my own; the worst consequence of this is, that we are forced to deny ourselves some things which hitherto we have been better able to afford, but they are such things as neither 40

life, nor the well-being of life, depend upon. My own income has been better than it is, but when it was best, it would not have enabled me to live as my connections demanded that I should, had it not been combined with a better than itself, at least at this end of the kingdom. Of this I had full proof during three months that I spent in lodgings at Huntingdon, in which time, by the help of good management, and a clear notion of economical matters, I contrived to spend the income of a twelvemonth. Now, my beloved cousin, you are in possession of the whole case as it stands. Strain no points to your own inconvenience or hurt, for there is no need of it, but indulge yourself in communicating (no matter what) that you can spare without missing it, since by so doing you will be sure to add to the comforts of my life one of the sweetest that I can enjoy—a token and proof of your affection.

In the affair of my next publication, toward which you also offer me so kindly your assistance, there will be no need that you should help me in the manner that you propose. It will be a large work, consisting, I should imagine, of six volumes at least. The twelfth of this month I shall have spent a year upon it, and it will cost me more than another. I do not love the booksellers well enough to make them a present of such a labour, but intend to publish by subscription. Your vote and interest, my dear cousin, upon the occasion, if you please—but nothing more. I will trouble you with some papers of proposals when the time shall come, and am sure that you will circulate as many for me as you can. Now, my dear, I am going to tell you a secret. It is a great secret that you must not whisper even to your cat. No creature is at this moment apprised of it but Mrs. Unwin and her son. I am making a new translation of Homer, and am on the point of finishing the twenty-first book of the Iliad. The reasons upon which I undertake this Herculean labour, and by which I justify an enterprise in which I seem so effectually anticipated by Pope, although in fact he has not anticipated me at all, I may possibly give you, if you wish for them, when I can find nothing more interesting to say,—a period which I do not conceive to be very near! I have not answered many things in your letter, nor can do it at present for want of room. I cannot believe but that I should know you, notwithstanding all that time may have done. There is not a feature of your face, could I meet it upon the road

by itself, that I should not instantly recollect. I should say, that is my cousin's nose, or those are her lips and her chin, and no woman upon earth can claim them but herself. As for me, I am a very smart youth of my years. I am not indeed grown gray so much as I am grown bald. No matter. There was more hair in 5 the world than ever had the honour to belong to me. Accordingly having found just enough to curl a little at my ears, and to intermix with a little of my own that still hangs behind, I appear, if you see me in an afternoon, to have a very decent head-dress, not easily distinguished from my natural growth; which being 10 worn with a small bag, and a black ribbon about my neck, continues to me the charms of my youth, even on the verge of age. Away with the fear of writing too often.—Yours, my dearest cousin,

W. C.

P.S.—That the view I give you of myself may be complete, I 15 add the two following items,—that I am in debt to nobody, and that I grow fat.

---

### TO LADY HESKETH.

THANKS FOR AN ANONYMOUS PRESENT—DETAILS ON HOMER—GENERAL COWPER.

OLNEY, *January 31, 1786.*

It is very pleasant, my dearest cousin, to receive a present so delicately conveyed as that which I received so lately from Anonymous; but it is also very painful to have nobody to thank for it. I find myself therefore driven by stress of necessity to the 20 following resolution, namely, that I will constitute you my thanks-receiver-general for whatsoever gift I shall receive hereafter, as well as for those that I have already received from a nameless benefactor. I therefore thank you, my cousin, for a most elegant present, including the most elegant compliment that 25 ever poet was honoured with; for a snuff-box of tortoise-shell, with a beautiful landscape on the lid of it, glazed with crystal, having the figures of three hares in the foreground, and inscribed above with these words, *The Peasant's Nest*—and below with these—*Tiney, Puss, Bess*. For all and every of these I thank 30 you, and also for standing proxy on this occasion. Nor must I forget to thank you, that so soon after I had sent you the first

letter of Anonymon, I received, another in the same hand. There! Now I am a little easier.

I have almost conceived a design to send up half a dozen stout country fellows, to tie by the leg to their respective bedposts the  
5 company that so abridges your opportunity of writing to me. Your letters are the joy of my heart, and I cannot endure to be robbed, by I know not whom, of half my treasure. But there is no comfort without a drawback, and therefore it is that I, who have unknown friends, have unknown enemies also. Ever since  
10 I wrote last I find myself in better health, and my nocturnal spasms and fever considerably abated. I intend to write to Dr. Kerr on Thursday, that I may gratify him with an account of my amendment; for to him I know that it will be a gratification. Were he not a physician, I should regret that he lives so distant,  
15 for he is a most agreeable man; but being what he is, it would be impossible to have his company, even if he were a neighbour, unless in time of sickness; at which time, whatever charms he might have himself, my own must necessarily lose much of their effect on him.

20 When I write to you, my dear, what I have already related to the General, I am always fearful lest I should tell you that for news with which you are well acquainted. For once, however, I will venture. On Wednesday last I received from Johnson the MS. copy of a specimen that I had sent to the General; and,  
25 enclosed in the same cover, notes upon it by an unknown critic. Johnson, in a short letter, recommended him to me as a man of unquestionable learning and ability. On perusal and consideration of his remarks, I found him such; and having nothing so much at heart as to give all possible security to yourself and the  
30 General, that my work shall not come forth unfinished, I answered Johnson, that I would gladly submit my MS. to his friend. He is in truth a very clever fellow, perfectly a stranger to me, and one who I promise you will not spare for severity of animadversion, where he shall find occasion. It is impossible for you, my dearest  
35 cousin, to express a wish that I do not equally feel a wish to gratify. You are desirous that Maty should see a book of my Homer, and for that reason if Maty *will* see a book of it, he shall be welcome, although time is likely to be precious, and consequently any delay, that is not absolutely necessary, as much as  
40 possible to be avoided. I am now revising the Iliad. It is a

business that will cost me four months, perhaps five; for I compare the very words as I go, and if much alteration should occur, must transcribe the whole. The first book I have almost transcribed already. To these five months, Johnson says that nine more must be added for printing, and upon my own experience I will venture to assure you, that the tardiness of printers will make those nine months twelve. There is danger, therefore, that my subscribers may think that I make them wait too long, and that they who know me not, may suspect a bubble. How glad shall I be to read it over in an evening, book by book, 10 as fast as I settle the copy, to you, and to Mrs. Unwin! She has been my touchstone always, and without reference to her taste and judgment I have printed nothing. With one of you at each elbow I should think myself the happiest of all poets.

The General and I, having broken the ice, are upon the 15 comfortable terms of correspondence. He writes very affectionately to me, and I say every thing to him that comes uppermost. I could not write frequently to any creature living upon any other terms than those. He tells me of infirmities that he has, which make him less active than he was. I am sorry to hear 20 that he has any such. Alas! alas! he was young when I saw him, only twenty years ago.

I have the most affectionate letter imaginable from Colman, who writes to me like a brother. The Chancellor is yet dumb.

May God have you in his keeping, my beloved cousin! Farewell, 25

W. C.

## TO LADY HESKETH.

INVITATION TO OLNEY—DESCRIPTION OF THE POET'S RESIDENCE.

OLNEY, *February 9, 1786.*

MY DEAREST COUSIN,—I have been impatient to tell you that I am impatient to see you again. Mrs. Unwin partakes with me in all my feelings upon this subject, and longs also to see you. I should have told you so by the last post, but have been so completely occupied by this tormenting specimen, that it was 30 impossible to do it. I sent the General a letter on Monday, that would distress and alarm him; I sent him another yesterday, that will I hope quiet him again. Johnson has apologized very

civilly for the multitude of his friend's strictures; and his friend  
 has promised to confine himself in future to a comparison of me  
 with the original, so that, I doubt not, we shall jog on merrily  
 together. And now, my dear, let me tell you once more, that  
 5 your kindness in promising us a visit has charmed us both. I  
 shall see you again. I shall hear your voice. We shall take  
 walks together. I will show you my prospects, the hovel, the alcove,  
 the Ouse, and its banks, every thing that I have described. I  
 anticipate the pleasure of those days not very far distant, and I  
 10 feel a part of it at this moment. Talk not of an inn! Mention it  
 not for your life! We have never had so many visitors, but we  
 could easily accommodate them all; though we have received  
 Unwin, and his wife, and his sister, and his son, all at once. My  
 dear, I will not let you come till the end of May, or beginning  
 15 of June, because before that time my greenhouse will not be  
 ready to receive us, and it is the only pleasant room belonging  
 to us. When the plants go out, we go in. I line it with mats,  
 and spread the floor with mats; and there you shall sit with a  
 bed of mignonette at your side, and a hedge of honeysuckles,  
 20 roses, and jasmine; and I will make you a bouquet of myrtle  
 every day. Sooner than the time I mention the country will not  
 be in complete beauty. And I will tell you what you shall find  
 at your first entrance. In primis, as soon as you have entered the  
 vestibule, if you cast a look on either side of you, you shall see on  
 25 the right hand a box of my making. It is the box in which have  
 been lodged all my hares, and in which lodges Puss at present.  
 But he, poor fellow, is worn out with age, and promises to die  
 before you can see him. On the right hand, stands a cupboard,  
 the work of the same author; it was once a dove-cage, but I  
 30 transformed it. Opposite to you stands a table, which I also  
 made. But a merciless servant having scrubbed it until it  
 became paralytic, it serves no purpose now but of ornament; and  
 all my clean shoes stand under it. On the left hand, at the  
 farther end of this superb vestibule, you will find the door of the  
 35 parlour, into which I will conduct you, and where I will introduce  
 you to Mrs. Unwin, unless we should meet her before, and where  
 we will be as happy as the day is long. Order yourself, my  
 cousin, to the Swan at Newport, and there you shall find me  
 ready to conduct you to Olney.

My dear, I have told Homer what you say about cusks and

urns, and have asked him, whether he is sure that it is a cask in which Jupiter keeps his wine. He swears that it is a cask, and that it will never be any thing better than a cask to eternity. So if the god is content with it, we must even wonder at his taste, and be so too.—Adieu! my dearest, dearest cousin,

W. C.

5

## TO LADY HESKETH.

ON DEFERRING HER VISIT—THE VICARAGE—ANONYMOUS PRESENT—  
DARLY DAYS.

OLNEY, April 17, 1786.

MY DEAREST COUSIN, — If you will not quote Solomon, my dearest cousin, I will. He says, and as beautifully as truly, "Hope deferred maketh the heart sick, but when the desire cometh, it is a tree of life!" I feel how much reason he had on his side when he made this observation, and am myself sick of 10 your fortnight's delay.

The vicarage was built by Lord Dartmouth, and was not finished till some time after we arrived at Olney, consequently it is new. It is a smart stone building well sashed, by much too good for the living, but just what I would wish for you. It has, 15 as you justly concluded from my premises, a garden, but rather calculated for use than ornament. It is square, and well walled, but has neither arbour, nor alcove, nor other shade, except the shadow of the house. But we have two gardens, which are yours. Between your mansion and ours is interposed nothing but 20 an orchard, into which a door opening out of our garden affords us the easiest communication imaginable, will save the roundabout by the town, and make both houses one. Your chamber windows look over the river, and over the meadows, to a village called Emberton, and command the whole length of a long bridge, 25 described by a certain poet, together with a view of the road at a distance. Should you wish for books at Olney, you must bring them with you, or you will wish in vain; for I have none but the works of a certain poet, Cowper, of whom perhaps you have heard, and they are as yet but two volumes. They may multiply 30 hereafter, but at present they are no more.

You are the first person for whom I have heard Mrs. Unwin

express such feeling as she does for you. She is not profuse in professions, nor forward to enter into treaties of friendship with new faces, but when her friendship is once engaged, it may be confided in even unto death. She loves you already, and how much more will she love you before this time twelvemonth! I have indeed endeavoured to describe you to her, but perfectly as I have you by heart, I am sensible that my picture cannot do you justice. I never saw one that did. Be you what you may, you are much beloved, and will be so at Olney; and Mrs. U. expects you with the pleasure that one feels at the return of a long absent dear relation—that is to say, with a pleasure such as mine. She sends you her warmest affection.

On Friday I received a letter from dear Anonymous, apprising me of a parcel that the coach would bring me on Saturday. Who is there in the world that has, or thinks he has, reason to love me to the degree that he does? But it is no matter. He chooses to be unknown; and his choice is, and ever shall be, so sacred to me, that if his name lay on the table before me reversed, I would not turn the paper about that I might read it. Much as it would gratify me to thank him, I would turn my eyes away from the forbidden discovery. I long to assure him that those same eyes, concerning which he expresses such kind apprehensions lest they should suffer by this laborious undertaking, are as well as I could expect them to be, if I were never to touch either book or pen. Subject to weakness, and occasional slight inflammations, it is probable that they will always be; but I cannot remember the time when they enjoyed anything so like an exemption from those infirmities as at present. One would almost suppose that reading Homer were the best ophthalmic in the world. I should be happy to remove his solicitude on the subject, but it is a pleasure that he will not let me enjoy. Well, then, I will be content without it; and so content, that though I believe you, my dear, to be in full possession of all this mystery, you shall never know me, while you live, either directly, or by hints of any sort, attempt to extort or to steal the secret from you. I should think myself as justly punishable as the Bethshemites, for looking into the ark which they were not allowed to touch.

I have not sent for Kerr, for Kerr can do nothing but send me to Bath, and to Bath I cannot go for a thousand reasons. The



summer will set me up again; I grow fat every day, and shall be as big as Gog or Magog, or both put together, before you come.

I did actually live three years with Mr. Chapinan, a solicitor, that is to say, I slept three years in his house, but I lived, that is to say, I spent my days, in Southampton Row, as you very 5 well remember. There was I and the future Lord Chancellor, constantly employed from morning to night in giggling and making giggle, instead of studying the law. O fie, cousin! how could you do so? I am pleased with Lord Thurlow's inquiries about me. If he takes it into that inimitable head of his, he 10 may make a man of me yet. I could love him heartily, if he would but deserve it at my hands. That I did so once is certain. The Duchess of ———, who in the world set her a-going? But if all the duchesses in the world were spinning like so many whirligigs for my benefit, I would not stop them. It is a noble 15 thing to be a poet; it makes all the world so lively. I might have preached more sermons than even Tillotson did, and better, and the world would have been still fast asleep; but a volume of verse is a fiddle that puts the universe in motion.—Yours, my dear friend and cousin,

20

W. C.

---

### TO LADY HESKETH.

THE SAME SUBJECT—COMFORT OF HER LETTERS.

OLNEY, *April 24, 1786.*

Your letters are so much my comfort, that I often tremble lest by any accident I should be disappointed; and the more because you have been, more than once, so engaged in company on the writing day, that I have had a narrow escape. Let me give you a piece of good counsel, my cousin: follow my laudable example, 25 write when you can, take Time's forelock in one hand and a pen in the other, and so make sure of your opportunity. It is well for me that you write faster than any body, and more in an hour than other people in two, else I know not what would become of me. When I read your letters I hear you talk, and I love 30 talking letters dearly, especially from you. Well! the middle of June will not be always a thousand years off, and when it comes I shall hear you, and see you too, and shall not care a farthing then if you do not touch a pen in a month. By the way, you

must either send me, or bring me some more paper, for before the moon shall have performed a few more revolutions I shall not have a scrap left, and tedious revolutions they are just now, that is certain.

5 I give you leave to be as peremptory as you please, especially at a distance; but when you say that you are a Cowper (and the better it is for the Cowpers that snell you are, and I give them joy of you, with all my heart) you must not forget that I boast myself a Cowper too, and have my humours, and fancies, and  
10 purposes, and determinations, as well as others of my name, and hold them as fast as they can. You indeed tell me how often I shall see you when you come. A pretty story truly. I am a *lie* Cowper, my dear, and claim the privileges that belong to my noble sex. But these matters shall be settled, as my cousin  
15 Agamemnon used to say, at a more convenient time.

I shall rejoice to see the letter you promise me, for though I met with a morsel of praise last week, I do not know that the week current is likely to produce me any, and having lately been pretty much pampered with that diet, I expect to find myself  
20 rather hungry by the time when your next letter shall arrive. It will therefore be very opportuno. The morsel, above alluded to, came from—whom do you think? From ———, but she desires that her authorship may be a secret. And in my answer I promised not to divulge it, except to you. It is a pretty copy of  
25 verses, neatly written, and well turned, and when you come you shall see them. I intend to keep all pretty things to myself till then, that they may serve me as a bait to lure you hither more effectually. The last letter that I had from—— I received so many years since, that it seems as if it had reached me a good  
30 while before I was born.

I was grieved at the heart that the General could not come, and that illness was in part the cause that hindered him. I have sent him, by his express desire, a new edition of the first book, and half the second. He would not suffer me to send it to you,  
35 my dear, lest you should post it away to Maty at once. He did not give that reason, but, being shrewd, I found it.

The grass begins to grow, and the leaves to bud, and every thing is preparing to be beautiful against you come—Adieu,

W. O.

You inquire of our walks, I perceive, as well as our rides. They are beautiful. You inquire also concerning a cellar. You have two cellars. Oh! what years have passed since we took the same walks, and drank out of the same bottle!—but a few more weeks, and then!

5

---

TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.

LADY HESKETH'S ARRIVAL—WESTON.

OLNEY, *June 19, 1786.*

My dear cousin's arrival has, as it could not fail to do, made us happier than we ever were at Olney. Her great kindness in giving us her company is a cordial that I shall feel the effect of, not only while she is here, but while I live.

Olney will not be much longer the place of our habitation. At 10 a village two miles distant we have hired a house of Mr. Throckmorton, a much better than we occupy at present, and yet not more expensive. It is situated very near to our most agreeable landlord, and his agreeable pleasure grounds. In him, and in his wife, we shall find such companions as will always 15 make the time pass pleasantly while they are in the country, and his grounds will afford us good air and good walking room in the winter,—two advantages which we have not enjoyed at Olney, where I have no neighbour with whom I can converse, and where, seven months in the year, I have been imprisoned by dirty and 20 impassable ways, till both my health and Mrs. Unwin's have suffered materially.

Homer is ever importunate, and will not suffer me to spend half the time with my distant friends that I would gladly give them.

W. C.

---

TO THE REV. WILLIAM UNWIN.

LADY HESKETH AT OLNEY—DESCRIPTION OF THEIR INTENDED RESIDENCE AT WESTON—COURSE OF LATIN READING FOR YOUTH.

OLNEY, *July 3, 1786.*

MY DEAR WILLIAM,—After a long silence I begin again. A 25 day given to my friends, is a day taken from Homer, but to such an interruption, now and then occurring, I have no objection. Lady Hesketh is, as you observe, arrived, and has been with us

near a fortnight. She pleases every body, and is pleased in her turn with every thing she finds at Olney; is always cheerful and sweet tempered, and knows no pleasure equal to that of communicating pleasure to us, and to all around her. This disposition 5 in her is the more comfortable, because it is not the humour of the day, a sudden flash of benevolence and good spirits, occasioned merely by a change of scene, but it is her natural turn, and has governed all her conduct ever since I knew her first. We are consequently happy in her society, and shall be happier still to 10 have you to partake with us in our joy. I am fond of the sound of bells, but was never more pleased with those of Olney than when they rang her into her new habitation. It is a compliment that our performers upon those instruments have never paid to any other personage (Lord Dartmouth excepted) since we knew 15 the town. In short, she is, as she ever was, my pride and my joy, and I am delighted with every thing that means to do her honour. Her first appearance was too much for me; my spirits, instead of being gently raised, as I had inadvertently supposed they would be, broke down with me under the pressure of too 20 much joy, and left me flat, or rather melancholy, throughout the day, to a degree that was mortifying to myself, and alarming to her. But I have made amends for this failure since, and in point of cheerfulness have far exceeded her expectations, for she knew that sabbath had been my suit for many years.

25 And now I shall communicate news that will give you pleasure. When you first contemplated the front of our abode, you were shocked. In your eyes it had the appearance of a prison, and you sighed at the thought that your mother lived in it. Your view of it was not only just, but prophetic. It had not only the aspect 30 of a place built for the purposes of incarceration, but has actually served that purpose through a long, long period, and we have been the prisoners. But a jail-delivery is at hand: the bolts and bars are to be loosed, and we shall escape. A very different mansion, both in point of appearance and accommodation, expects 35 us, and the expense of living in it not greater than we are subjected to in this. It is situated at Weston, one of the prettiest villages in England, and belongs to Mr. Throckmorton. We all three dine with him to-day by invitation, and shall survey it in the afternoon, point out the necessary repairs, and finally adjust 40 the treaty. I have my cousin's promise that she will never let

another year pass without a visit to us; and the house is large enough to take us, and our suite, and her also, with as many of hers as she shall choose to bring. The change will, I hope, prove advantageous both to your mother and me, in all respects. Here we have no neighbourhood; there we shall have most agreeable 5 neighbours in the Throckmortons. Here we have a bad air in winter, impregnated with the fishy smelling fumes of the marsh miasma; there we shall breathe in an atmosphere untainted. Here we are confined from September to March, and sometimes longer; there we shall be upon the very verge of pleasure grounds, 10 in which we can always ramble, and shall not wade through almost impassable dirt to get at them. Both your mother's constitution and mine have suffered materially by such close and long confinement, and it is high time, unless we intend to retreat into the grave, that we should seek out a more wholesome 15 residence. So far is well, the rest is left to Heaven.

I have hardly left myself room for an answer to your queries concerning my friend John and his studies. I should recommend the civil war of Cæsar, because he wrote it who ranks, I believe, as the best writer, as well as soldier, of his day. There 20 are books (I know not what they are, but you do, and can easily find them) that will inform him clearly of both the civil and military management of the Romans, the several officers I mean, in both departments, and what was the peculiar province of each. The study of some such book would, I should think, prove a good 25 introduction to that of Livy, unless you have a Livy with notes to that effect. A want of intelligence in those points has heretofore made the Roman history very dark and difficult to me; therefore I thus advise.—Yours ever,

W. C.

---

### TO JOSEPH HILL, ESQ.

ADVENTURE OF A MANUSCRIPT OF TRANSLATION.

OLNEY, *October 6, 1786.*

You have not heard, I suppose, that the ninth book of my 30 translation is at the bottom of the Thames. But it is even so. A storm overtook it in its way to Kingston, and it sunk, together with the whole cargo of the boat in which it was a passenger. Not figuratively foreshewing, I hope, by its submersion, the fate

For if it is not a hermitage, at least it is a much better thing; and you must always understand, my dear, that when poets talk of cottages, hermitages, and such like things, they mean a honso with six sashes in front, two comfortable parlours, a smart staircase, and three bedchambers of convenient dimensions; in 5 short, exactly such a house as this.

The Throckmortons continue the most obliging neighbours in the world. One morning last week, they both went with me to the Cliffs—a scene, my dear, in which you would delight beyond measure, but which you cannot visit except in the spring or 10 autumn. The heat of summer and the clinging dirt of winter would destroy you. What is called the Cliff is no cliff, nor at all like one, but a beautiful terrace, sloping gently down to the Ouse, and from the brow of which, though not lofty, you have a view of such a valley as makes that which you see from the hills 15 near Olney, and which I have had the honour to celebrate, an affair of no consideration.

Wintry as the weather is, do not suspect that it confines me. I ramble daily, and every day change my ramble. Wherever I go, I find short grass under my feet, and when I have travelled 20 perhaps five miles, come home with shoes not at all too dirty for a drawing room. I was pacing yesterday under the elms that surround the field in which stands the great alcove, when, lifting my eyes, I saw two black genteel figures bolt through a hedge into the path where I was walking. You guess already 25 who they were, and that they could be nobody but our neighbours. They had seen me from a hill at a distance, and had traversed a great turnip-field to get to me. You see, therefore, my dear, that I am in some request. Alas! in too much request with some people. The verses of Oadwallader have found me at last. 30

I am charmed with your account of our little cousin at Kensington. If the world does not spoil him hereafter, he will be a valuable man.—Good night, and may God bless thee!

W. C.

## TO LADY HESKETH.

ANECDOTES OF A KITTEN AND A LEECH.

THE LODGE, November 10, 1787.

THE Parliament, my dearest cousin, prorogued continually, is a meteor dancing before my eyes, promising me my wish only to disappoint me, and none but the king and his ministers can tell when you and I shall come together. I hope, however, that the period, though so often postponed, is not far distant, and that once more I shall behold you, and experience your power to make winter gay and sprightly.

I have a kitten, the drollest of all creatures that ever wore a cat's skin. Her gambols are not to be described, and would be incredible, if they could. In point of size she is likely to be a kitten always, being extremely small of her age, but time I suppose, that spoils every thing, will make her also a cat. You will see her I hope before that melancholy period shall arrive, for no wisdom that she may gain by experience and reflection hereafter will compensate the loss of her present hilarity. She is dressed in a tortoise-shell suit, and I know that you will delight in her.

Mrs. Throckmorton carries us to-morrow in her chaise to Chicheley. The event, however, must be supposed to depend on elements, at least on the state of the atmosphere, which is turbulent beyond measure. Yesterday it thundered, last night it lightened, and at three this morning I saw the sky as red as a city in flames could have made it. I have a leech in a bottle that foretells all these prodigies and convulsions of Nature. No, not, as you will naturally conjecture, by articulate utterance of oracular notices, but by a variety of gesticulations, which here I have not room to give an account of. Suffice it to say, that no change of weather surprises him, and that in point of the earliest and most accurate intelligence, he is worth all the barometers in the world. None of them all, indeed, can make the least pretence to foretell thunder,—a species of capacity of which he has given the most unequivocal evidence. I gave but sixpence for him, which is a great more than the market price, though he is in fact, or rather would be, if leeches were not found in every ditch, an invaluable acquisition.

W. G.

## TO LADY HESKETH.

TERMINATION OF A FOX CHASE—"IN AT THE DEATH."

THE LODGE, *March 3, 1788.*

ONE day last week, Mrs. Unwin and I, having taken our morning walk, and returning homeward through the Wilderness, met the Throckmertons. A minute after we had met them, we heard the cry of hounds at no great distance, and mounting the broad stamp of an elm, which had been felled, and by the aid 5 of which we were enabled to look over the wall, we saw them. They were all that time in our orchard; presently we heard a terrier, belonging to Mrs. Throckmorton, which you may remember by the name of Fary, yelping with much vehemence, and saw her running through the thickets, within a few yards 10 of us, at her utmost speed, as if in pursuit of something which we doubted not was the fox. Before we could reach the other end of the Wilderness, the hounds entered also; and when we arrived at the gate which opens into the grove, there we found the whole weary cavalcade assembled. The huntsman dismount- 15 ing begged leave to follow his hounds on foot, for he was sure, he said, that they killed him,—a conclusion which, I suppose, he drew from their profound silence. He was accordingly admitted, and with a sagacity that would not have dishonoured the best hound in the world, pursuing precisely the same track which the 20 fox and the dogs had taken, though he had never had a glimpse of either after their first entrance through the rails, arrived where he found the slaughtered prey. He soon produced dead reynard, and rejoined us in the grove with all his dogs about him. Having an opportunity to see a ceremony, which I was pretty 25 sure would never fall in my way again, I determined to stay, and to notice all that passed with the most minute attention. The huntsman having by the aid of a pitchfork lodged reynard on the arm of an elm, at the height of about nine feet from the ground, there left him for a considerable time. The gentlemen sat on 30 their horses contemplating the fox, for which they had toiled so hard; and the hounds assembled at the foot of the tree, with faces not less expressive of the most rational delight, contemplated the same object. The huntsman remounted, cut off a foot, and throw it the hounds—one of them swallowed it whole like a 35 belus. He then once more alighted, and drawing down the



fox by the hinder legs, desired the people, who were by this time rather numerous, to open a lane for him to the right and left. He was instantly obeyed, when throwing the fox to the distance of some yards, and screaming like a fiend, "tear him to  
 5 pieces"—at least six times repeatedly, he consigned him over absolutely to the pack, who in a few minutes devoured him completely. Thus, my dear, as Virgil says, what none of the gods could have ventured to promise me, time itself, pursuing its accustomed course, has of its own accord presented me with. I  
 10 have been in at the death of a fox, and you now know as much of the matter as I, who am as well informed as any sportsman in England.—Yours,

W. O.

---

TO THE REV. MR. HURDIS.

ANECDOTES IN NATURAL HISTORY.

WESTON, *February 23, 1793.*

MY DEAR SIR,—My eyes, which have long been inflamed, will hardly serve me for Homer, and oblige me to make all my letters  
 15 short. You have obliged me much by sending me so speedily the remainder of your notes. I have begun with them again, and find them, as before, very much to the purpose. More to the purpose they could not have been, had you been poetry professor already. I rejoice sincerely in the prospect you have of that  
 20 office, which, whatever may be your own thoughts of the matter, I am sure you will fill with great sufficiency. Would that my interest and power to serve you were greater! One string to my bow I have, and one only, which shall not be idle for want of my exertions. I thank you likewise for your very entertaining  
 25 notices and remarks in the natural way. The hurry in which I write would not suffer me to send you many in return, had I many to send, but only two or three present themselves.

Frogs will feed on worms. I saw a frog gathering into his gullet an earth-worm as long as himself; it cost him time and  
 30 labour, but at last he succeeded.

Mrs. Unwin and I, crossing a brook, saw from the foot-bridge somewhat at the bottom of the water which had the appearance of a flower. Observing it attentively, we found that it consisted

of a circular assemblage of minnows; their heads all met in a centre, and their tails diverging at equal distances, and being elevated above their heads, gave them the appearance of a flower half blown. One was longer than the rest; and as often as a straggler came in sight, he quitted his place to pursue him, and having driven him away, he returned to it again, no other minnow offering to take it in his absence. This we saw him do several times. The object that had attracted them all was a dead minnow, which they seemed to be devouring.

After a very rainy day, I saw on one of the flower borders 10 what seemed a long hair, but it had a waving, twining motion. Considering more nearly, I found it alive, and endued with spontaneity, but could not discover at the ends of it either head or tail, or any distinction of parts. I carried it into the house, when the air of a warm room dried and killed it presently. 15

W. C.

## SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

### NELSON'S EARLY LIFE.

HORATIO, son of Edmund and Catherine Nelson, was born Sept. 29, 1758, in the parsonage-house of Burnham Thorpe, a village in the county of Norfolk, of which his father was rector. The maiden name of his mother was Suckling: her grandmother was an elder sister of Sir Robert Walpole, and this child was named 20 after his godfather, the first Lord Walpole. Mrs. Nelson died in 1767, leaving eight out of eleven children. Her brother, Captain Maurice Suckling, of the navy, visited the widower upon this event, and promised to take care of one of the boys. Three years afterwards, when Horatio was only twelve years of age, 25 being at home during the Christmas holidays, he read in the county newspaper that his uncle was appointed to the *Raisonnable*, of 64 guns. "Do, William," said he to a brother who was a year and a half older than himself, "write to my father, and tell him that I should like to go to sea with uncle Maurice." Mr. Nelson 30

was then at Bath, whither he had gone for the recovery of his health: his circumstances were straitened, and he had no prospect of ever seeing them bettered. He knew that it was the wish of providing for himself by which Horatio was chiefly actuated, and 5 did not oppose his resolution; he understood also the boy's character, and had always said that, in whatever station he might be placed, he would climb, if possible, to the very top of the tree. Accordingly, Captain Sackling was written to. "What," said he in his answer, "has poor Horatio done, who is so weak, that he, 10 above all the rest, should be sent to rough it out at sea? But let him come, and the first time we go into action a cannon-ball may knock off his head, and provide for him at once."

It is manifest from these words that Horatio was not the boy whom his uncle would have chosen to bring up in his own profession. He was never of a strong body, and the ague, which at 15 that time was one of the most common diseases in England, had greatly reduced his strength; yet he had already given proofs of that resolute heart and nobleness of mind which, during his whole career of labour and of glory, so eminently distinguished 20 him. When a mere child, he strayed a-bird's-nesting from his grandmother's house, in company with a cowboy. The dinner-hour elapsed; he was absent, and could not be found; and the alarm of the family became very great, for they apprehended that he might have been carried off by gipsies. At length, after 25 search had been made for him in various directions, he was discovered alone, sitting composedly by the side of a brook which he could not get over. "I wonder, child," said the old lady when she saw him, "that hunger and fear did not drive you home."

"Fear, grandmamma!" replied the future hero; "I never saw 30 fear; what is it?" Once, after the winter-holidays, when he and his brother William had set off on horseback to return to school; they came back, because there had been a fall of snow; and William, who did not much like the journey, said it was too deep for them to venture on. "If that be the case," said the father, 35 "you certainly shall not go; but make another attempt, and I will leave it to your honour. If the road is dangerous, you may return: but remember, boys, I leave it to your honour." The snow was deep enough to have afforded them a reasonable excuse; but Horatio was not to be prevailed upon to turn back. "We 40 must go on," said he; "remember, brother, it was left to our

honour!" There were some fine pears growing in the schoolmaster's garden, which the boys regarded as lawful booty, and in the highest degree tempting; but the boldest among them were afraid to venture for the prize. Horatio volunteered upon this service: he was lowered down at night from the bed-room window by some sheets, plundered the tree, was drawn up with the pears, and then distributed them among his schoolfellows, without reserving any for himself. "He only took them," he said, "because every other boy was afraid."

Early on a cold and dark spring morning, Mr. Nelson's servant arrived at this school, at North Walsham, with the expected summons for Horatio to join his ship. The parting from his brother William, who had been for so many years his playmate and bedfellow, was a painful effort, and was the beginning of those privations which are the sailor's lot through life. He accompanied his father to London. The *Raisonnable* was lying in the Medway. He was put into the Chatham stage, and, on its arrival, was set down with the rest of the passengers, and left to find his way on board as he could. After wandering about in the cold, without being able to reach the ship, an officer, observing the forlorn appearance of the boy, questioned him; and happening to be acquainted with his uncle, took him home, and gave him some refreshment. When he got on board, Captain Suckling was not in the ship, nor had any person been apprised of the boy's coming. He paced the deck the whole remainder of the day without being noticed by anyone; and it was not till the second day that somebody, as he expressed it, "took compassion on him." The pain which is felt when we are first transplanted from our native soil, (when the living branch is cut from the parent tree, is one of the most poignant which we have to endure through life.) There are after-griefs which wound more deeply, which leave behind them scars never to be effaced, which bruise the spirit and sometimes break the heart; but never do we feel so keenly the want of love, the necessity of being loved and the sense of utter desertion, as when we first leave the heaven of home, and are, as it were, pushed off upon the stream of life. Added to these feelings, the sea-boy has to endure physical hardships, and the privation of every comfort, even of sleep. Nelson had a feeble body and an affectionate heart, and he remembered through life his first days of wretchedness in the service.

The *Raisonné* having been commissioned on account of the dispute respecting the Falkland Islands, was paid off as soon as the difference with the Court of Spain was accommodated, and Captain Suckling was removed to the *Triumph*, 74, then stationed 5 as a guard-ship in the Thames. This was considered as too inactive a life for a boy, and Nelson was therefore sent a voyage to the West Indies in a merchant-ship, commanded by Mr. John Rathbone, an excellent seaman, who had served as master's mate under Captain Suckling in the *Dreadnought*. He returned a 10 practical seaman, but with a hatred to the King's service, and a saying then common among the sailors—"Aft the most honour; forward the better man." Rathbone had probably been disappointed and disgusted in the navy, and, with no unfriendly intentions, warned Nelson against a profession which he himself had 15 found hopeless. His uncle received him on board the *Triumph* on his return, and discovering his dislike to the navy, took the best means of reconciling him to it. He held it out as a reward, that if he attended well to his navigation, he should go in the cutter and decked long boat which was attached to the command- 20 ing officer's ship at Chatham. Thus he became a good pilot for vessels of that description, from Chatham to the Tower, and down the Swin Channel to the North Foreland; and acquired a confidence among rocks and sands of which he often felt the value.

25 Nelson had not been many months on board the *Triumph*; when his love of enterprise was excited by hearing that two ships were fitting out for a voyage of discovery towards the North Pole. In consequence of the difficulties which were expected on such a service, these vessels were to take out effective 30 men instead of the usual number of boys. This, however, did not deter him from soliciting to be received, and, by his uncle's interest, he was admitted as coxswain under Captain Lutwidge, second in command. The voyage was undertaken in compliance with an application from the Royal Society. The 35 Hon. Captain Constantine John Phipps, eldest son of Lord Mulgrave, volunteered his services. The *Racehorse* and *Carcass* bombs were selected as the strongest ships, and therefore best adapted for such a voyage; and they were taken into dock and strengthened, to render them as secure as possible against the 40 ice. Two masters of Greenlandmen were employed as pilots.

for each ship. No expedition was ever more carefully fitted out ; and the first Lord of the Admiralty, Lord Sandwich, with a laudable sollicitude, went on Board himself before their departure, to see that everything had been completed to the wish of the officers. The ships were provided with a simple and excellent apparatus for distilling fresh from salt water, the invention of Dr. Irving, who accompanied the expedition. It consisted merely in fitting a tube to the ship's kettle, and applying a wet mop to the surface as the vapour was passing. By these means, from thirty-four to forty gallons were produced 10 every day.

They sailed from the Nore on the 4th of June: on the 6th of the following month they were in lat. 79 deg. 56 min. 39 sec., long. 9 deg. 43 min. 30 sec. E. The next day, about the place where most of the old discoverers had been stopped, the *Racehorse* 15 was beset with ice ; but they hove her through with ice-anchors. Captain Phipps continued ranging along the ice northward and westward till the 24th ; he then tried to the eastward. On the 30th he was in lat. 80 deg. 13 min., long. 18 deg. 48 min. E., among the islands and in the ice, with no appearance of an 20 opening for the ships. The weather was exceedingly fine, mild, and unusually clear. Here they were becalmed in a large bay, with three apparant openings between the islands which formed it, but everywhere, as far as they could see, surrounded with ice. There was not a breath of air ; the water was perfectly 25 smooth ; the ice covered with snow, low and even, except a few broken pieces near the edge ; and the pools of water in the middle of the ice-fields just crusted over with young ice. On the next day the ice closed upon them, and no opening was to be seen anywhere, except a hole, or lake, as it might be called, 30 of about a mile and a half in circumference, where the ships lay fast to their ice-anchors. They filled their casks with water from these ice-fields, which was very pure and soft. The men were playing on the ice all day ; but the Greenland pilots, who were further than they had ever been before, and considered 35 that the season was far advancing, were alarmed at being thus beset.

The next day there was not the smallest opening ; the ships were within less than two lengths of each other, separated by ice, and neither having room to turn. The ice, which the day 40

before had been flat and almost level with the water's edge, was now in many places forced higher than the mainyard, by the pieces squeezing together. A day of thick fog followed: it was succeeded by clear weather; but the passage by which 5 the ships had entered from the westward was closed, and no open water was in sight, either in that or any other quarter. By the pilots' advice, the men were set to cut a passage and warp through the small openings to the westward. They sawed through pieces of ice twelve feet thick; and this labour 10 continued the whole day, during which their utmost efforts did not move the ships above three hundred yards, while they were driven, together with the ice, far to the N. E. and E. by the current. Sometimes a field of several acres square would be lifted up between two larger islands, and incorporated with 15 them; and thus these larger pieces continued to grow by aggregation. Another day passed, and there seemed no probability of getting the ships out, without a strong E. or N. E. wind. The season was far advanced, and every hour lessened the chance of extricating themselves. Young as he was, Nelson 20 was appointed to command one of the boats which were sent out to explore a passage into the open water. It was the means of saving a boat belonging to the *Racehorse* from a singular but imminent danger. Some of the officers had fired at and wounded a walrus. As no other animal has so humanlike an expression 25 in its countenance, so also is there none that seems to possess more of the passions of humanity. The wounded animal dived immediately, and brought up a number of its companions, and they all joined in an attack upon the boat. They wrested an oar from one of the men: and it was with the utmost difficulty 30 that the crew could prevent them from starving or upsetting her, till the *Carcass's* boat came up: and the walruses, finding their enemies thus reinforced, dispersed. Young Nelson exposed himself in a more daring manner. One night, during the mid-watch, he stole from the ship with one of his comrades, 35 taking advantage of a rising fog, and set out over the ice in pursuit of a bear. It was not long before they were missed. The fog thickened, and Captain Lutwidge and his officers became exceedingly alarmed for their safety. Between three and four in the morning the weather cleared, and the two 40 adventurers were seen, at a considerable distance from the ship,

attacking a huge bear. The signal for them to return was immediately made. Nelson's comrade called upon him to obey, but in vain. His musket had flashed in the pan; their ammunition was expended; and a chasm in the ice, which divided him from the bear, probably preserved his life. "Never 5 mind," he cried; "do but let me get a blow at this devil with the butt-end of my musket, and we shall have him." Captain Lutwidge, however, seeing his danger, fired a gun, which had the desired effect of frightening the beast; and the boy then returned, somewhat afraid of the consequences of his trespass. 10 The captain reprimanded him sternly for conduct so unworthy of the office which he filled, and desired to know what motive he could have for hunting a bear. "Sir," said he, pouting his lip, as he was wont to do when agitated, "I wished to kill the bear, that I might carry the skin to my father." 15

A party were now sent to an island about twelve miles off (named Walden's Island in the charts, from the midshipman who was intrusted with this service) to see where the open water lay. They came back with the information that the ice, though close all about them, was open to the westward, round 20 the point by which they came in. They said also, that upon the island they had had a fresh east wind. This intelligence considerably abated the hopes of the crew; for where they lay it had been almost calm, and their main dependence had been upon the effect of an easterly wind in clearing the bay. There 25 was but one alternative: either to wait the event of the weather upon the ships, or to betake themselves to the boats. The likelihood that it might be necessary to sacrifice the ships had been foreseen; the boats accordingly were adapted, both in number and size, to transport, in case of emergency, the 30 whole crew; and there were Dutch whalers upon the coast, in which they could all be conveyed to Europe. As for wintering where they were, that dreadful experiment had been already tried too often. No time was to be lost. The ships had driven into shoal water, having but fourteen fathoms. Should they, 35 or the ice to which they were fast, take the ground, they must inevitably be lost; and at this time they were driving fast toward some rocks on the N. E. Captain Phipps sent for the officers of both ships, and told them his intention of preparing the boats for going away. They were immediately hoisted out, 40



and the fitting begun. Canvass bread-bags were made, in case it should be necessary suddenly to desert the vessels; and men were sent with the lead and line to the northward and eastward, to sound wherever they found cracks in the ice, that they might have notice before the ice took the ground; for, in that case, the ship must instantly have been crushed or upset.

On the 7th of August they began to haul the boats over the ice, Nelson having command of the four-oared cutter. The men behaved excellently well, like true British seamen; they seemed reconciled to the thought of leaving the ships, and had full confidence in their officers. About noon, the ice appeared rather more open near the vessels; and as the wind was easterly, though there was but little of it, the sails were set, and they got about a mile to the westward. They moved very slowly, and were not now nearly so far to the westward as when they were first beset. However, all sail was kept upon them, to force them through whenever the ice slackened the least. Whatever exertions were made, it could not be possible to get the boats to the water's edge before the 14th; and if the situation of the ships should not alter by that time, it would not be justifiable to stay longer by them. The commander therefore resolved to carry on both attempts together, moving the boats constantly, and taking every opportunity of getting the ships through. A party was sent out next day to the westward, to examine the state of the ice; they returned with tidings that it was very heavy and close, consisting chiefly of large fields. The ships, however, moved something, and the ice itself was drifting westward. There was a thick fog, so that it was impossible to ascertain what advantage had been gained. It continued on the 9th; but the ships were moved a little through some very small openings: the mist cleared off in the afternoon; and it was then perceived that they had driven much more than could have been expected to the westward, and that the ice itself had driven still farther. In the course of the day they got past the boats, and took them on board again. On the morrow, the wind sprang up to the NN.E. All sail was set, and the ships forced their way through a great deal of very heavy ice. They frequently struck, and with such force that one stroke broke the shank of the *Racehorse's* best bower-anchor but the vessels made way; and by noon they had cleared the ice, and were out

at sea. The next day they anchored in Smecrenberg Harbour, close to that island of which the westernmost point is called Hakluyt's Headland, in honour of the great promoter and compiler of our English voyages of discovery.

Here they remained a few days, that the men might rest after 5 their fatigue. No insect was to be seen in this dreary country, nor any species of reptile—not even the common earth-worm. Large bodies of ice, called ice-bergs, filled up the valleys between high mountains, so dark as, when contrasted with the snow, to appear black. The colour of the ice was a lively light green. 10 Opposite to the place where they fixed their observatory was one of these icebergs, above three hundred feet high; its side towards the sea was nearly perpendicular, and a stream of water issued from it. Large pieces frequently broke off, and rolled down into the sea. There was no thunder nor lightning during 15 the whole time they were in these latitudes. The sky was generally loaded with hard white clouds, from which it was never entirely free even in the clearest weather. They always knew when they were approaching the ice, long before they saw it, by a bright appearance near the horizon, which the Greenlandmen 20 called the blink of the ice. The season was now so far advanced, that nothing more could have been attempted, if, indeed, anything had been left untried; but the summer had been unusually favourable, and they had carefully surveyed the wall of ice extending for more than twenty degrees between the latitudes 25 of 80 and 81, without the smallest appearance of any opening.

The ships were paid off shortly after their return to England; and Nelson was then placed by his uncle with Captain Farmer, in the *Seahorse*, of 20 guns, then going out to the East Indies in the squadron under Sir Edward Hughes. He was stationed 30 in the foretop at watch and watch. His good conduct attracted the attention of the master (afterwards Captain Surridge), in whose watch he was, and, upon his recommendation, the captain rated him as midshipman. At this time his countenance was florid, and his appearance rather stout and athletic; but when 35 he had been about eighteen months in India, he felt the effects of that climate, so perilous to European constitutions. The disease baffled all power of medicine he was reduced almost to a skeleton, the use of his limbs was for some time entirely lost, and the only hope that remained was from a voyage home. 40

Accordingly, he was brought home by Captain Pigot, in the *Dolphin*; and had it not been for the attentive and careful kindness of that officer on the way, Nelson would never have lived to reach his native shores. He had formed an acquaintance  
 5 with Sir Charles Pole, Sir Thomas Troubridge, and other distinguished officers, then, like himself, beginning their career; he had left them pursuing that career in full enjoyment of health and hope, and was returning from a country in which all things were to him new and interesting, with a body broken down by  
 10 sickness, and spirits which had sunk with his strength. Long afterwards, when the name of Nelson was known as widely as that of England itself, he spoke of the feelings which he at this time endured. "I felt impressed," said he, "with a feeling that I should never rise in my profession. My mind was  
 15 staggered with a view of the difficulties I had to surmount, and the little interest I possessed. I could discover no means of reaching the object of my ambition. After a long and gloomy reverie, in which I almost wished myself overboard, a sudden glow of patriotism was kindled within me, and presented my king and  
 20 country as my patron. "Well, then," I exclaimed, "I will be a hero! and, confiding in Providence, I will brave every danger!"

---

### SIEGE OF SANTA CRUZ.

TWELVE days after this *rencontre*, Nelson sailed at the head of an expedition against Teneriffe. A report had prevailed a few months before that the Viceroy of Mexico, with the treasure-ships,  
 25 had put into that island. This had led Nelson to meditate the plan of an attack upon it, which he communicated to Earl St. Vincent. He was perfectly aware of the difficulties of the attempt. "I do not," said he, "reckon myself equal to Blake; but, if I recollect right, he was more obliged to the wind coming off the  
 30 land than to any exertions of his own. The approach by sea to the anchoring-place is under very high land, passing three valleys; therefore the wind is either in from the sea, or squally with calms from the mountains;" and he perceived that, if the Spanish ships were won, the object would still be frustrated, if the wind did not  
 35 come off shore. The land-force, he thought, would render success certain; and there were the troops from Elba, with all necessary stores and artillery, already embarked. "But here," said he,

"soldiers must be consulted; and I know, from experience, they have not the same boldness in undertaking a political measure that we have. We look to the benefit of our country, and risk our own fame every day to serve her; a soldier obeys his orders, and no more." Nelson's experience at Corsica justified him in 5 this harsh opinion; he did not live to see the glorious days of the British army under Wellington. The army from Elba, consisting of 3,700 men, would do the business, he said, in three days, probably in much less time; and he would undertake, with a very small squadron, to perform the naval part; for, though the shore 10 was not easy of access, the transports might run in and land the troops in one day.

The report concerning the viceroy was unfounded; but a homeward-bound Manila ship put into Santa Cruz at this time, and the expedition was determined upon. It was not fitted out upon 15 the scale which Nelson had proposed. Four ships of the line, three frigates, and the *Fox* cutter, formed the squadron; and he was allowed to choose such ships and officers as he thought proper. No troops were embarked; the seamen and marines of the squadron being thought sufficient. His orders were to make a 20 vigorous attack; but on no account to land in person, unless his presence should be absolutely necessary. The plan was, that the boats should land in the night between the fort on the N. E. side of Santa Cruz Bay and the town, make themselves masters of that fort, and then send a summons to the governor. By 25 midnight, the three frigates, having the force on board which was intended for this debarkation, approached within three miles of the place; but owing to a strong gale of wind in the offing, and a strong current against them in shore, they were not able to get within a mile of the landing-place before daybreak; and 30 then they were seen, and their intention discovered. Tronbridge and Bowen, with Captain Oldfield, of the marines, went upon this to consult with the admiral what was to be done; and it was resolved that they should attempt to get possession of the heights above the fort. The frigates accordingly landed their 35 men; and Nelson stood in with the line-of-battle ships, meaning to batter the fort, for the purpose of distracting the attention of the garrison. A calm and contrary current hindered him from getting within a league of the shore; and the heights were by this time so secured, and manned with such a force, as to be 40.

judged impracticable. Thus foiled in his plans by circumstances of wind and tide, he still considered it a point of honour that some attempt should be made. This was on the 22nd of July; he re-embarked his men that night, got the ships on the 24th to anchor about two miles north of the town, and made show as if he intended to attack the heights. At six in the evening, signal was made for the boats to prepare to proceed on the service as previously ordered.

When this was done, Nelson addressed a letter to the commander-in-chief—the last which was ever written with his right hand. “I shall not,” said he, “enter on the subject why we are not in possession of Santa Cruz. Your partiality will give credit that all has hitherto been done which was possible, but without effect. This night I, humble as I am, command the whole, destined to land under the batteries of the town; and to-morrow my head will probably be crowned either with laurel or cypress. I have only to recommend Josiah Nisbet to you and my country. The Duke of Clarence, should I fall, will, I am confident, take a lively interest for my son-in-law, on his name being mentioned.”

Perfectly aware how desperate a service this was likely to prove, before he left the *Theseus* he called Lieutenant Nisbet, who had the watch on deck, into the cabin, that he might assist in arranging and burning his mother’s letters. Perceiving that the young man was armed, he earnestly begged him to remain behind.

“Should we both fall, Josiah,” said he, “what would become of your poor mother? The care of the *Theseus* falls to you; stay, therefore, and take charge of her.” Nisbet replied, “Sir, the ship must take care of herself; I will go with you to-night, if I never go again.”

He met his captains at supper on board the *Seahorse*, Captain Freemantle, whose wife, whom he had lately married in the Mediterranean, presided at table. At eleven o’clock the boats, containing between 600 and 700 men, with 180 on board the *Fox* cutter, and from seventy to eighty in a boat which had been taken the day before, proceeded in six divisions toward the town, conducted by all the captains of the squadron except Freemantle and Bowen, who attended with Nelson to regulate and lead the way to the attack. They were to land on the mole, and thence hasten, as fast as possible, into the great square; then form, and proceed as should be found expedient. They were not discovered

till about half-past one o'clock, when, being within half gun-shot of the landing-place, Nelson directed the boats to cast off from each other, give a huzzah, and push for the shore. But the Spaniards were excellently well prepared; the alarm-bells answered the huzzah, and a fire of thirty or forty pieces of cannon, with 5 musketry from one end of the town to the other, opened upon the invaders. Nothing, however, could check the intrepidity with which they advanced. The night was exceedingly dark, most of the boats missed the mole, and went on shore through a raging surf, which stove all to the left of it. The admiral, Freemantle, 10 Thompson, Bowen, and four or five other boats, found the mole; they stormed it instantly, and carried it, though it was defended, as they imagined, by four or five hundred men. Its guns, which were six-and-twenty pounders, were spiked; but such a heavy fire of musketry and grape was kept up from the citadel and the 15 houses at the head of the mole, that the assailants could not advance, and nearly all of them were killed or wounded.

In the act of stepping out of the boat, Nelson received a shot through the right elbow, and fell; but, as he fell, he caught the sword, which he had just drawn, in his left hand, determined 20 never to part with it while he lived, for it had belonged to his uncle, Captain Suckling, and he valued it like a relic. Nisbet, who was close to him, placed him at the bottom of the boat, and laid his hat over the shattered arm, lest the sight of the blood, which gushed out in great abundance, should increase his faint- 25 ness. He then examined the wound, and, taking some silk handkerchiefs from his neck, bound them round tight above the lacerated vessels. Had it not been for this presence of mind in his son-in-law, Nelson must have perished. One of his bargemen, by name Lovel, tore his shirt into shreds, and made a sling with 30 them for the broken limb. They then collected five other seamen, by whose assistance they succeeded, at length, in getting the boat afloat; for it had grounded with the falling tide. Nisbet took one of the oars, and ordered the steersman to go close under the guns of the battery, that they might be safe from its tremendous 35 fire. Hearing his voice, Nelson roused himself, and desired to be lifted up in the boat, that he might look about him. Nisbet raised him up; but nothing could be seen except the firing of the guns on shore, and what could be discerned by their flashes upon the stormy sea. In a few minutes a general shriek was heard 40

from the crew of the *Fox*, which had received a shot under water, and went down. Ninety-seven men were lost in her; eighty-three were saved, many by Nelson himself, whose exertions on this occasion greatly increased the pain and danger of his wound.

5 The first ship which the boat could reach happened to be the *Seahorse*; but nothing could induce him to go on board, though he was assured that, if they attempted to row to another ship, it might be at the risk of his life. "I had rather suffer death," he replied, "than alarm Mrs. Freemantle, by letting her see me in  
10 this state, when I can give her no tidings whatever of her husband." They pushed on for the *Theseus*. When they came alongside, he peremptorily refused all assistance in getting on board, so impatient was he that the boat should return, in hopes that it might save a few more from the *Fox*. He desired to have only a  
15 single rope thrown over the side, which he twisted round his left hand, saying, "Let me alone; I have yet my legs left, and one arm. Tell the surgeon to make haste and get his instruments. I know I must lose my right arm; so the sooner it is off the better." The spirit which he displayed in jumping up the ship's  
20 side astonished everybody.

Freemantle had been severely wounded in the right arm, soon after the admiral. He was fortunate enough to find a boat at the beach, and got instantly to his ship. Thompson was wounded; Bowen killed, to the great regret of Nelson; as was also one of  
25 his own officers, Lieutenant Weatherhead, who had followed him from the *Agamemnon*, and whom he greatly and deservedly esteemed. Tronbridge, meantime, fortunately for his party, missed the mole in the darkness, but pushed on shore under the batteries, close to the south end of the citadel. Captain Waller, of the  
30 *Emerald*, and two or three other boats, landed at the same time. The surf was so high that many others put back. The boats were instantly filled with water and stove against the rocks; and most of the ammunition in the men's pouches was wetted. Having collected a few men, they pushed on to the great square, hoping  
35 there to find the admiral and the rest of the force. The ladders were all lost, so that they could make no immediate attempt on the citadel; but they sent a sergeant, with two of the town's people, to summon it. This messenger never returned; and Tronbridge, having waited about an hour in painful expectation of his friends,  
40 marched to join Captains Hood and Miller, who had effected their

landing to the south-west. They then endeavoured to procure some intelligence of the admiral and the rest of the officers, but without success. By daybreak they had gathered together about eighty marines, eighty pikemen, and 180 small-arm seamen—all the survivors of those who had made good their landing. They obtained some ammunition from the prisoners whom they had taken, and marched on to try what could be done at the citadel without ladders. They found all the streets commanded by field-pieces and several thousand Spaniards, with about a hundred French, under arms, approaching by every avenue. Finding himself without provisions, the powder wet, and no possibility of obtaining either stores or reinforcements from the ships, the boats being lost, Troubridge, with great presence of mind, sent Captain Samuel Hood with a flag of truce to the governor, to say he was prepared to burn the town, and would instantly set fire to it if the Spaniards approached one inch nearer. This, however, if he were compelled to do it, he should do with regret, for he had no wish to injure the inhabitants; and he was ready to treat upon these terms—that the British troops should re-embark, with all their arms of every kind, and take their own boats, if they were saved, or be provided with such others as might be wanting; they, on their part, engaging that the squadron should not molest the town, nor any of the Canary Islands; all prisoners on both sides to be given up. When these terms were proposed, the governor made answer that the English ought to surrender as prisoners of war; but Captain Hood replied he was instructed to say that, if the terms were not accepted in five minutes, Captain Troubridge would set the town on fire, and attack the Spaniards at the point of the bayonet. Satisfied with his success, which was, indeed, sufficiently complete, and respecting, like a brave and honourable man, the gallantry of his enemy, the Spaniard acceded to the proposal. "And here," says Nelson in his journal, "it is right we should notice the noble and generous conduct of Don Juan Antonio Gutierrez, the Spanish governor. The moment the terms were agreed to, he directed our wounded men to be received into the hospitals, and all our people to be supplied with the best provisions that could be procured; and made it known that the ships were at liberty to send on shore, and purchase whatever refreshments they were in want of during the time they might be off the island." A youth, by name Don Bernardo Collagon, a



stripped himself of his shirt to make bandages for one of those Englishmen against whom, not an hour before, he had been engaged in battle. Nelson wrote to thank the governor for the humanity which he had displayed. Presents were interchanged  
 5 between them. Sir Horatio offered to take charge of his despatches for the Spanish Government; and thus actually became the first messenger to Spain of his own defeat.

The total loss of the English, in killed, wounded, and drowned, amounted to two hundred and fifty. Nelson made no mention of  
 10 his own wound in his official despatches; but in a private letter to Lord St. Vincent, the first which he wrote with his left hand, he shows himself to have been deeply affected by the failure of this enterprise. "I am become," he said, "a burden to my friends, and useless to my country; but by my last letter you  
 15 will perceive my anxiety for the promotion of my son-in-law, Josiah Nisbet. When I leave your command, I become dead to the world; 'I go hence, and am no more seen.' If from poor Bowen's loss you think it proper to oblige me, I rest confident you will do it. The boy is under obligations to me; but he repaid  
 20 me, by bringing me from the mole of Santa Cruz. I hope you will be able to give me a frigate, to convey the remains of my carcass to England." "A left-handed admiral," he said, in a subsequent letter, "will never again be considered as useful; therefore the sooner I get to a very humble cottage the better, and make room  
 25 for a sounder man to serve the State." His first letter to Lady Nelson was written under the same opinion, but in a more cheerful strain. "It was the chance of war," said he, "and I have great reason to be thankful; and I know it will add much to your pleasure to find that Josiah, under God's providence, was prin-  
 30 cipally instrumental in saving my life. I shall not be surprised if I am neglected and forgotten: probably, I shall no longer be considered as useful; however, I shall feel rich if I continue to enjoy your affection. I beg neither you nor my father will think much of this mishap; my mind has long been made up to such an event."  
 35 His son-in-law, according to his wish, was immediately promoted; and honours enough to heal his wounded spirit awaited him in England. Letters were addressed to him by the First Lord of the Admiralty, and by his steady friend the Duke of Clarence, to congratulate him on his return, covered as  
 40 he was with glory. He assured the Duke, in his reply, that not

a scrap of that ardour with which he had hitherto served his king had been shot away. The freedom of the cities of Bristol and London were transmitted to him; he was invested with the order of the Bath, and received a pension of £1000 a-year. The memorial which, as a matter of form, he was called upon to present 5 on this occasion, exhibited an extraordinary catalogue of services performed during the war. It stated that he had been in four actions with the fleets of the enemy, and in three actions with boats employed in cutting out of harbour, in destroying vessels, and in taking three towns; he had served on shore with the army 10 four months, and commanded the batteries at the sieges of Bastia and Calvi; he had assisted at the capture of seven sail of the line, six frigates, four corvettes, eleven privateers; taken and destroyed near fifty sail of merchant-vessels: and actually been engaged against the enemy upwards of an hundred and twenty 15 times; in which service he had lost his right eye and right arm, and been severely wounded and bruised in his body.

His sufferings from the lost limb were long and painful. A nerve had been taken up in one of the ligatures at the time of the operation; and the ligature, according to the practice of the 20 French surgeons, was of silk, instead of waxed thread: this produced a constant irritation and discharge; and the ends of the ligature being pulled every day, in hopes of bringing it away, occasioned fresh agony. He had scarcely any intermission of pain, day or night, for three months after his return to England. 25 Lady Nelson, at his earnest request, attended the dressing his arm, till she had acquired sufficient resolution and skill to dress it herself. One night, during this state of suffering, after a day of constant pain, Nelson retired early to bed, in hope of enjoying some respite by means of laudanum. He was at that time lodging 30 in Bond-street; and the family was soon disturbed by a mob knocking loudly and violently at the door. The news of Duncan's victory had been made public, and the house was not illuminated. But when the mob were told that Admiral Nelson lay there in bed, badly wounded, the foremost of them made answer, "You 35 shall hear no more from us to-night;" and, in fact, the feeling of respect and sympathy was communicated from one to another with such effect that, under the confusion of such a night, the house was not molested again.

About the end of November, after a night of sound sleep, he 40

found the arm nearly free from pain; the surgeon was immediately sent for to examine it, and the ligature came away with the slightest touch. From that time it began to heal. As soon as he thought his health established, he sent the following form of 5 thanksgiving to the minister of St. George's, Hanover-square:—  
 “An officer desires to return thanks to Almighty God for his perfect recovery from a severe wound, and also for the many mercies bestowed on him.”

Not having been in England till now, since he lost his eye, he 10 went to receive a year's pay, as smart money, but could not obtain payment, because he had neglected to bring a certificate from a surgeon, that the sight was actually destroyed. A little irritated that this form should be insisted upon, because, though the fact was not apparent, he thought it was sufficiently notorious, he 15 procured a certificate, at the same time, for the loss of his arm, saying, “they might just as well doubt one as the other.” This put him in good humour with himself, and with the clerk who had offended him. On his return to the office, the clerk, finding it was only the annual pay of a captain, observed he thought it 20 had been more. “Oh,” replied Nelson, “this is only for an eye! In a few days I shall come for an arm; and in a little time longer, God knows, most probably for a leg!” Accordingly, he soon afterwards went, and, with perfect good humour, exhibited the certificate of the loss of his arm.

---

## WHITE'S NATURAL HISTORY OF SELBORNE.

---

25 In the court of Norton farm-house, a manor farm to the north-west of the village, on the white malms, stood within these twenty years a broad-leaved elm, or wych hazel, *ulmus folio latissimo scabro* of Ray, which, though it had lost a considerable leading bough in the great storm in the year 1703, equal to a 30 moderate tree, yet, when felled, contained eight loads of timber; and being too bulky for a carriage, was sawn off at seven feet above the butt, where it measured near eight feet in diameter. This elm I mention, to show to what a bulk planted elms may attain; as this tree must certainly have been such, from its situa- 35 tion. In the centre of the village, and near the church, is a

square piece of ground, surrounded by houses, and vulgarly called the Plestor. In the midst of this spot stood, in olden times, a vast oak, with a short squat body, and huge horizontal arms, extending almost to the extremity of the area. This venerable tree, surrounded with stone steps, and seats above them, was the 5 delight of old and young, and a place of much resort in summer evenings; where the former sat in grave debate, while the latter frolicked and danced before them. Long might it have stood, had not the amazing tempest in 1703 overturned it at once, to the infinite regret of the inhabitants, and the vicar, who bestowed 10 several pounds in setting it in its place again: but all his care could not avail; the tree sprouted for a time, then withered and died. This oak I mention, to show to what a bulk planted oaks also may arrive; and planted this tree must certainly have been, as appears from what is known concerning the antiquities of the 15 village.

On the Blackmoor estate there is a small wood called Losel's, of a few acres, that was lately furnished with a set of oaks of a peculiar growth and great value: they were tall and taper like firs, but, standing near together, had very small heads,—only a 20 little brush, without any large limbs. About twenty years ago, the bridge at the Toy, near Hampton Court, being much decayed, some trees were wanted for the repairs, that were fifty feet long without bough, and would measure twelve inches diameter at the little end. Twenty such trees did a purveyor find in this little 25 wood, with this advantage, that many of them answered the description at sixty feet. These trees were sold for £20 a piece.

In the centre of this grove there stood an oak, which, though shapely and tall on the whole, bulged out into a large excrescence about the middle of the stem. On this a pair of ravens had fixed 30 their residence for such a series of years, that the oak was distinguished by the title of the Raven Tree. Many were the attempts of the neighbouring youths to get at this eyrie: the difficulty whetted their inclinations, and each was ambitious of surmounting the arduous task. But when they arrived at the 35 swelling, it jutted out so in their way, and was so far beyond their grasp, that the most daring lads were awed, and acknowledged the undertaking to be too hazardous. So the ravens built on, nest upon nest, in perfect security, till the fatal day arrived in which the wood was to be levelled. It was in the month 40

of February, when those birds usually sit. The saw was applied to the butt, the wedges were inserted into the opening, the woods echoed to the heavy blows of the beetle, or mallet, the tree nodded to its fall; but still the dam sat on. At last, when it gave way, the bird was flung from her nest; and, though her parental affection deserved a better fate, was whipped down by the twigs, which brought her dead to the ground.

SELBORNE, July 8, 1773.

DEAR SIR,—Some young men went down lately to a pond on the verge of Wolmer Forest to hunt flappers, or young wild ducks, many of which they caught, and, among the rest, some very minute yet well-fledged wild fowls alive, which, upon examination, I found to be teals. I did not know till then that teals ever bred in the south of England, and was much pleased with the discovery: this I look upon as a great stroke in natural history.

We have had, ever since I can remember, a pair of white owls that constantly breed under the eaves of this church. As I have paid good attention to the manner of life of these birds during their season of breeding, which lasts the summer through, the following remarks may not perhaps be unacceptable. About an hour before sunset (for then the mice begin to run) they sally forth in quest of prey, and hunt all round the hedges of meadows and small enclosures for them, which seem to be their only food. In this irregular country we can stand on an eminence, and see them beat the fields over like a setting-dog, and often drop down in the grass or corn. I have minuted these birds with my watch for an hour together, and have found that they return to their nest, the one or the other of them, about once in five minutes; reflecting, at the same time, on the adroitness that every animal is possessed of, as far as regards the well-being of itself and offspring. But a piece of address which they show when they return loaded, should not, I think, be passed over in silence. As they take their prey with their claws, so they carry it in their claws to their nest; but, as the feet are necessary in their ascent under the tiles, they constantly perch first on the roof of the chancel, and shift the mouse from their claws to their bill, that the feet may be at liberty to take hold of the plate on the wall, as they are rising under the eaves.

White owls seem not (but in this I am not positive) to hoot at all; all that clamorous hooting appears to me to come from the wood kinds. The white owl does indeed snore and hiss in a tremendous manner; and these menaces well answer the intention of intimidating; for I have known a whole village up in arms on such an occasion, imagining the churchyard to be full of goblins and spectres. White owls also often scream horribly as they fly along: from this screaming, probably, arose the common people's imaginary species of screech-owl, which they superstitiously think attends the windows of dying persons. The plumage of the remiges of the wings of every species of owl that I have yet examined, is remarkably soft and pliant. Perhaps it may be necessary that the wings of these birds should not make much resistance or rushing, that they may be able to steal through the air unheard upon a nimble and watchful quarry. 15

While I am talking of owls, it may not be improper to mention what I was told by a gentleman of the county of Wilts. As they were grubbing a vast hollow pollard ash, that had been the mansion of owls for centuries, he discovered at the bottom a mass of matter that at first he could not account for. After some examination, he found that it was a congeries of the bones of mice, (and perhaps of birds and bats,) that had been heaping together for ages, being cast up in pellets out of the crops of many generations of inhabitants. For owls cast up the bones, fur, and feathers of what they devour, after the manner of hawks. He believes, he told me, that there were bushels of this kind of substance. 25

When brown owls hoot, their throats swell as big as an hen's egg. I have known an owl of this species live a full year without any water. Perhaps the case may be the same with all birds of prey. When owls fly, they stretch out their legs behind them, as a balance to their large heavy heads; for, as most nocturnal birds have large eyes and ears, they must have large heads to contain them. Large eyes, I presume, are necessary to collect every ray of light, and large concave ears to command the smallest degree of sound or noise. 35

The *hirundines* are a most inoffensive, harmless, entertaining, social, and useful tribe of birds; they touch no fruit in our gardens; delight, all except one species, in attaching themselves to our houses; amuse us with their migrations, songs, and 40

marvellous agility : and clear our outlets from the annoyances of gnats and other troublesome insects. Some districts in the South Seas, near Guiaquil, are desolated, it seems, by the infinite swarms of venomous mosquitoes, which fill the air, and render those 5 coasts insupportable. It would be worth inquiring, whether any species of *hirundines* is found in these regions. Whoever contemplates the myriads of insects that sport in the sunbeams of a summer evening in this country, will soon be convinced to what a degree our atmosphere would be choked with them were it not 10 for the friendly interposition of the swallow tribe.

Many species of birds have their peculiar lice : but the *hirundines* alone seem to be annoyed with *dipterous* insects which infest every species, and are so large, in proportion to themselves, that they must be extremely irksome and injurious to them. These 15 are the *hippoboscæ hirundinis*, with narrow subulated wings, abounding in every nest ; and are hatched by the warmth of the bird's own body during incubation, and crawl about under its feathers.

A species of them is familiar to horsemen in the south of 20 England, under the name of forest-fly, and, to some, of side-fly ; from its running sideways, like a crab. It creeps under the tails and about the groins of horses, which, at their first coming out of the north, are rendered half frantic by the tickling sensation ; while our own breed little regards them.

25 The curious Reaumur discovered the large eggs, or rather pupæ, of these flies, as big as the flies themselves, which he hatched in his own bosom. Any person that will take the trouble to examine the old nests of either species of swallows, may find in them the black shining cases, or skins, of the pupæ 30 of these insects ; but, for other particulars, too long for this place, we refer the reader to *L' Histoire d' Insectes* of that admirable entomologist.—Tom. iv. pl. 11.

---

SELBORNE, Nov. 2, 1773.

DEAR SIR,—In obedience to your injunctions, I sit down to give you some account of the house-martin, or martlet ; and, if my 35 monography of this little domestic and familiar bird should happen to meet with your approbation, I may probably soon extend

my inquiries to the rest of the British *hirundines*,—the swallow, the swift, and the bank-martin.

A few house-martins begin to appear about the 16th of April; usually some few days later than the swallow. For some time after they appear, the *hirundines* in general pay no attention to the business of nidification, but play and sport about, either to recruit from the fatigue of their journey, if they do migrate at all, or else that their blood may recover its true tone and texture after it has been so long benumbed by the severities of winter. About the middle of May, if the weather be fine, the martin begins to think in earnest of providing a mansion for its family. The crust or shell of this nest seems to be formed of such dirt or loam as comes most readily to hand, and is tempered and wrought together with little bits of broken straws, to render it tough and tenacious. As this bird often builds against a perpendicular wall, without any projecting ledge under it, it requires its utmost efforts to get the first foundation firmly fixed, so that it may safely carry the superstructure. On this occasion the bird not only clings with its claws, but partly supports itself by strongly inclining its tail against the wall, making that a fulcrum; and, thus steadied, it works and plasters the materials into the face of the brick or stone. But, then, that this work may not, while it is soft and green, pull itself down by its own weight, the provident architect has prudence and forbearance enough not to advance her work too fast; but, by building only in the morning, and by dedicating the rest of the day to food and amusement, gives it sufficient time to dry and harden. About half an inch seems to be sufficient layer for a day. Thus, careful workmen, when they build mud-walls (informed at first, perhaps, by these little birds,) raise but a moderate layer at a time, and then desist, lest the work should become top-heavy, and so be ruined by its own weight. By this method, in about ten or twelve days, is formed an hemispheric nest, with a small aperture towards the top,—strong, compact, and warm, and perfectly fitted for all the purposes for which it was intended. But, then, nothing is more common than for the house-sparrow, as soon as the shell is finished, to seize on it as its own, to eject the owner, and to line it after its own manner.

After so much labour is bestowed in erecting a mansion, as nature seldom works in vain, martins will breed on, for several



years together, in the same nest, where it happens to be well sheltered and secure from the injuries of weather. The shell, or crust, of the nest is a sort of rustic-work, full of knobs and protuberances on the outside; nor is the inside of those that I have examined smoothed with any exactness at all; but is rendered soft and warm, and fit for incubation, by a lining of small straws, grasses, and feathers; and sometimes by a bed of moss interwoven with wool.

At first, when the young are hatched, and are in a naked and helpless condition, the parent birds, with tender assiduity, carry out what comes away from their young. Were it not for this affectionate cleanliness, the nestlings would soon be burnt up and destroyed, in so deep and hollow a nest, by their own caustic excrement. In the quadruped creation, the same neat precaution is made use of; particularly among dogs and cats, where the dams lick away what proceeds from their young. But, in birds, there seems to be a particular provision, that the dung of nestlings is enveloped in a tough kind of jelly, and, therefore, is the easier conveyed off, without soiling or danbing. Yet, as Nature is cleanly in all her ways, the young perform this office for themselves in a little time, by thrusting their tails out at the aperture of their nest.

As the young of small birds presently arrive at their full growth, they soon become impatient of confinement, and sit all day with their heads out at the orifice, where the dams, by clinging to the nest, supply them with food from morning to night. For a time, the young are fed on the wing by their parents: but the feat is done by so quick and almost imperceptible a sleight, that a person must have attended very exactly to their motions, before he would be able to perceive it. As soon as the young are able to shift for themselves, the dams immediately turn their thoughts to the business of a second brood; while the first flight, shaken off and rejected by their nurses, congregates in great flocks, and are the birds that are seen clustering and hovering, on sunny mornings, and evenings, round towers and steeples, and on the roofs of churches and houses. These congregations usually begin to take place about the first week, in August; and, therefore, we may conclude that, by that time, the first flight is pretty well over. The young of this species do not quit their abodes altogether; but the more forward birds

get abroad some days before the rest. These, approaching the eaves of buildings, and playing about before them, make people think that several old ones attend one nest. They are often capricious in fixing on a nesting-place, beginning many edifices, and leaving them unfinished; but, when once a nest is completed in a 5 sheltered place, it serves for several seasons. Those which breed in a ready-finished house get the start, in hatching, of those that build new, by ten days or a fortnight. These industrious artificers are at their labours in the long days before four in the morning: when they fix their materials, they plaster them on 10 with their chins, moving their heads with a quick vibratory motion. They dip and wash as they fly sometimes, in very hot weather, but not so frequently as swallows. It has been observed, that martins usually build to a north-east or north-west aspect, that the heat of the sun may not crack and destroy their nests; 15 but instances are also remembered where they bred for many years in vast abundance in an hot stifed inn-yard, against a wall facing to the south.

Birds in general are wise in their choice of situation; but, in this neighbourhood, every summer, is seen a strong proof to the 20 contrary, at an house without eaves, in an exposed district, where some martins build, year by year, in the corners of the windows. But, as the corners of these windows (which face to the south-east and south-west) are too shallow, the nests are washed down every hard rain; and yet these birds drudge on to no purpose, 25 from summer to summer, without changing their aspect or house. It is a piteous sight to see them labouring when half their nest is washed away, and bringing dirt "*generis lapsi sarcire ruinas.*" Thus is instinct a most wonderfully unequal faculty; in some instances so much above reason; in other respects, so far below 30 it! Martins love to frequent towns, especially if there are great lakes and rivers at hand; nay, they even affect the close air of London. And I have not only seen them nesting in the Borough, but even in the Strand and Fleetstreet; but, then, it was obvious, from the dinginess of their aspect, that their feathers partook of 35 the filth of that sooty atmosphere. Martins are, by far, the least agile of the four species; their wings and tails are short, and, therefore, they are not capable of such surprising turns, and quick and glancing evolutions, as the swallow. Accordingly, they make use of a placid, easy motion, in a middle region of the 40

air, seldom mounting to any great height, and never sweeping along together over the surface of the ground or water. They do not wander far for food, but select sheltered districts, over some lake, or under some hanging wood, or in some hollow vale, especially in windy weather. They breed the latest of all the swallow kind: in 1772, they had nestlings on to October the twenty-first, and were never without unfledged young as late as Michaelmas.

As the summer declines, the congregating flocks increase in numbers daily by the constant accession of the second broods: till at last they swarm in myriads upon myriads round the villages on the Thames, darkening the face of the sky as they frequent the banks of that river, where they roost. They retire, the bulk of them I mean, in vast flocks together, about the beginning of October; but have appeared, of late years, in a considerable flight, in this neighbourhood, for one day or two, as late as November the third and sixth, after they were supposed to have been gone for more than a fortnight. They, therefore, withdraw with us the latest of any species. Unless these birds are very short-lived, indeed, or unless they do not return to the district where they are bred, they must undergo vast devastation somehow and somewhere; for the birds that return yearly bear no manner of proportion to the birds that retire.

House-martins are distinguished from their congeners by having their legs covered with soft downy feathers down to their toes. They are no songsters, but twitter, in a pretty, inward, soft manner, in their nests. During the time of breeding, they are often greatly molested with fleas.

DEAR SIR, — The house-swallow, or chimney-swallow, is, undoubtedly, the first comer of all the British *hirundines*; and appears in general on or about the 13th of April, as I have remarked from many years' observation. Not but now and then a straggler is seen much earlier; and, in particular, when I was a boy, I observed a swallow for a whole day together on a sunny warm Shrove-Tuesday; which day could not fall out later than the middle of March, and often happened early in February.

It is worth remarking, that these birds are seen first about

lakes and mill-ponds; and it is also very particular, that, if these early visitors happen to find frost and snow, as was the case of the two dreadful springs of 1770 and 1771, they immediately withdraw for a time; a circumstance this, much more in favour of hiding than migration; since it is much more probable that a bird should retire to its hybernaculum just at hand, than return for a week or two only to warmer latitudes.

The swallow, though called the chimney-swallow, by no means builds altogether in chimneys, but often within barns and out-houses, against the rafters; and so she did in Virgil's time,— 10

---

"Ante  
Garrula quàm tigna nidos suspendat Hirundo.

"Before the noisy swallow's nest depends,  
From the strong beam that through the roof extends."

In Sweden, she builds in barns, and is called *ladu svåla* (the barn-swallow). Besides, in the warmer parts of Europe, there are no chimneys to houses, except they are English-built. In these countries she constructs her nest in porches, and gateways, and galleries, and open halls. 15

Here and there a bird may affect some odd, peculiar place; as we have known a swallow build down the shaft of an old well, through which chalk had been formerly drawn up, for the purpose of manure; but, in general, with us this *hirundo* breeds in chimneys, and loves to haunt those stacks where there is a constant 20 fire—no doubt for the sake of warmth. Not that it can subsist in the immediate shaft where there is a fire; but prefers one adjoining to that of the kitchen, and disregards the perpetual smoke of that funnel, as I have often observed with some degree of wonder. 25

Five or six, or more feet down the chimney, does this little bird begin to form her nest, about the middle of May, which consists, like that of the house-martin, of a crust or shell composed of dirt or mud, mixed with short pieces of straw, to render it tough and permanent; with this difference, that whereas the 30 shell of the martin is nearly hemispheric, that of the swallow is open at the top, and like half a deep dish: this nest is lined with fine grasses and feathers, which are often collected as they float in the air.

Wonderful is the address which this adroit bird shows all day long, in ascending and descending with security through so narrow a pass. When hovering over the mouth of the funnel, the vibrations of her wings acting on the confined air, occasion a  
 5 rumbling like thunder. It is not improbable that the dam submits to this inconvenient situation so low in the shaft in order to secure her broods from rapacious birds, and particularly from owls, which frequently fall down chimneys, perhaps in attempting to get at these nestlings.

10 The swallow lays from four to six white eggs, dotted with red specks; and brings out her first brood about the last week in June, or the first week in July. The progressive method by which the young are introduced into life, is very amusing: first, they emerge from the shaft with difficulty enough, and often fall  
 15 down into the rooms below: for a day or so, they are fed on the chimney-top, and then are conducted to the dead leafless bough of some tree, where, sitting in a row, they are attended with great assiduity, and may then be called perchera. In a day or two more, they become fliers, but are still unable to take their  
 20 own food; therefore, they play about near the place where the dams are hawking for flies; and when a mouthful is collected, at a certain signal given, the dam and the nestling advance, rising towards each other, and meeting at an angle, the young one all the while uttering such a little quick note of gratitude  
 25 and complacency, that a person must have paid very little regard to the wonders of Nature that has not often remarked this feat.

The dam betakes herself immediately to the business of a second brood as soon as she is disengaged from her first, which at once associates with the first broods of house-martins, and  
 30 with them congregates, clustering on sunny roofs, towers, and trees. This *hirundo* brings out her second brood towards the middle and end of August.

All the summer long is the swallow a most instructive pattern of unwearied industry and affection; for, from morning to night,  
 35 while there is a family to be supported, she spends the whole day in skimming close to the ground, and exerting the most sudden turns and quick evolutions. Avenues, and long walks, under hedges, and pasture-fields, and mown meadows where cattle graze, are her delight, especially if there are trees interspersed, because  
 40 in such spots insects most abound. When a fly is taken, a smart

snap from her bill is heard, resembling the noise at the shutting of a watch-case; but the motion of the mandibles is too quick for the eye.

The swallow, probably the male bird, is the exhibitor to house-martins and other little birds, announcing the approach of birds 5 of prey; for as soon as an hawk appears, with a shrill alarming note he calls all the swallows and martins about him, who pursue in a body, and buffet and strike their enemy till they have driven him from the village, darting down from above on his back, and rising in a perpendicular line in perfect security. This bird also 10 will sound the alarm and strike at cats when they climb on the roofs of houses, or otherwise approach the nests. Each species of *hirundo* drinks as it flies along, sipping the surface of the water; but the swallow alone, in general, washes on the wing, by dropping into a pool for many times together. In very hot 15 weather, house-martins and bank-martins dip and wash a little.

The swallow is a delicate songster, and, in soft sunny weather, sings both perching and flying; on trees in a kind of concert, and on chimney-tops; is also a bold flier, ranging to distant 20 downs and commons even in windy weather, which the other species seem much to dislike; nay, even frequenting exposed seaport towns, and making little excursions over the salt water. Horsemen on wide downs are often closely attended by a little party of swallows for miles together, which play before and behind them, sweeping around, and collecting all the skulking 25 insects that are roused by the trampling of the horses' feet. When the wind blows hard, without this expedient, they are often forced to settle to pick up their lurking prey.

This species feeds much on little *coleoptera*, as well as on gnats and flies, and often settles on dug ground, or paths, for gravels to 30 grad and digest its food. Before they depart, for some weeks, to a bird they forsake houses and chimneys, and roost in trees, and usually withdraw about the beginning of October, though some few stragglers may appear on at times till the first week in November.

35

Some few pairs haunt the new and open streets of London next the fields, but do not enter, like the house-martin, the close and crowded parts of the city.

Both male and female are distinguished from their congeners by the length and forkedness of their tails. They are undoubtedly 40

the most nimble of all the species; and when the male pursues the female in amorous chase, they then go beyond their usual speed, and exert a rapidity almost too quick for the eye to follow.

- 5 After this circumstantial detail of the life and discerning *σροπνῆ* of the swallow, I shall add, for your further amusement, an anecdote or two, not much in favour of her sagacity.

A certain swallow built, for two years together, on the handles of a pair of garden-shears, that were stuck up against the boards  
10 in an out-house, and therefore must have (had) her nest spoiled whenever that implement was wanted. And, what is stranger still, another bird of the same species built its nest on the wings and body of an owl, that happened by accident to hang dead and dry from the rafter of a barn. This owl, with the nest on its  
15 wings, and with eggs in the nest, was brought as a curiosity worthy the most elegant private museum in Great Britain. The owner, struck with the oddity of the sight, furnished the bringer with a large shell, or conch, desiring him to fix it just where the owl hung. The person did as he was ordered; and the following  
20 year, a pair, probably the same pair, built their nest in the conch, and laid their eggs.

The owl and the conch make a strange, grotesque appearance, and are not the least curious specimens in that wonderful collection of art and nature.

- 25 Thus is instinct in animals, taken the least out of its way, an undistinguishing, limited faculty, and blind to every circumstance that does not immediately respect self-preservation, or lead at once to the propagation or support of their species.

DEAR SIR,—There is a wonderful spirit of sociality in the brute  
30 creation, independent of sexual attachment: the congregation of gregarious birds in the winter is a remarkable instance.

Many horses, though quiet with company, will not stay one minute in a field by themselves: the strongest fences cannot restrain them. My neighbour's horse will not only not stay by  
35 himself abroad, but he will not bear to be left alone in a strange stable, without discovering the utmost impatience, and endeavouring to break the rack and manger with his fore feet. He had

been known to leap out at a stable-window, through which dung was thrown, after company; and yet, in other respects, is remarkably quiet. Oxen and cows will not fatten by themselves; but will neglect the finest pasture that is not recommended by society. It would be needless to instance in sheep, which constantly flock together.

But this propensity seems not to be confined to animals of the same species; for we know a doe, still alive, that was brought up from a little fawn with a dairy of cows; with them it goes a-field, and with them it returns to the yard. The dogs of the house take no notice of this deer, being used to her; but, if strange dogs come by, a chase ensues; while the master smiles to see his favourite securely leading her pursuers over hedge, or gate, or stile, till she returns to the cows, who, with fierce lowings, and menacing horns, drive the assailants quite out of the pasture.

Even great disparity of kind and size does not always prevent social advances and mutual fellowship. For a very intelligent and observant person has assured me, that in the former part of his life, keeping but one horse, he happened also on a time to have but one solitary hen. These two incongruous animals spent much of their time together, in a lonely orchard, where they saw no creature but each other. By degrees, an apparent regard began to take between these two sequestered individuals. The fowl would approach the quadruped with notes of complacency, rubbing herself gently against his legs; while the horse would look down with satisfaction, and move with the greatest caution and circumspection, lest he should trample on his diminutive companion. Thus, by mutual good offices, each seemed to console the vacant hours of the other: so that Milton, when he puts the following sentiment in the mouth of Adam, seems to be somewhat mistaken:—

“Much less can bird with beast, or fish with fowl,  
So well converse, nor with the ox the ape.”

---

SELBORNE, Dec. 12, 1775.

DEAR SIR,—We had in this village, more than twenty years ago, an idiot boy, whom I well remember, who, from a child, shewed a strong propensity to bees; they were his food, his amusement, 35



his sole object. And as people of this cast have seldom more than one point in view, so this lad exerted all his few faculties on this one pursuit. In the winter he dozed away his time, within his father's house, by the fire-side, in a kind of torpid state, seldom departing from the chimney-corner; but in the summer he was all alert, and in quest of his game in the fields, and on sunny banks. Honey-bees, humble-bees, and wasps, were his prey wherever he found them: he had no apprehensions from their stings, but would seize them with naked hands, and at once disarm them of their weapons, and sack their bodies for the sake of their honey-bags. Sometimes he would fill his bosom, between his shirt and his skin, with a number of these captives: and sometimes would confine them in bottles. He was a very *merops apiaster*, or bee-bird; and very injurious to men that kept bees; for he would slide into their bee-gardens, and sitting down before the stools, would rap with his finger on the hives, and so take the bees as they came out. He has been known to overturn hives for the sake of honey, of which he was passionately fond. Where metheglin was making, he would linger round the tubs and vessels, begging a draught of what he called bee-wine. As he ran about, he used to make a humming noise with his lips, resembling the buzzing of bees. This lad was lean and sallow, and of a cadaverous complexion; and, except in his favourite pursuit, in which he was wonderfully adroit, discovered no manner of understanding. Had his capacity been better, and directed to the same object, he had perhaps abated much of our wonder at the feats of a more modern exhibiter of bees; and we may justly say of him now,

"Thou,  
Had thy presiding star propitious shone,  
Shouldst Wildman be."

When a tall youth, he was removed from hence to a distant village, where he died, as I understand, before he arrived at manhood.

---

These views were fortified, it is said, by the counsels of a soldier named Botello, who professed the mysterious science of judicial astrology. He had gained credit with the army by some predictions which had been verified by the events; those 5 lucky hits which make chance pass for calculation with the credulous multitude. This man recommended to his countrymen by all means to evacuate the place in the night, as the hour most propitious to them, although he should perish in it. The event proved the astrologer better acquainted with his own horoscope 10 than with that of others.

It is possible Botello's predictions had some weight in determining the opinion of Cortés. Superstition was the feature of the age, and the Spanish general, as we have seen, had a full measure of its bigotry. Seasons of gloom, moreover, dispose the 15 mind to a ready acquiescence in the marvellous. It is, however, quite as probable that he made use of the astrologer's opinion, finding it coincided with his own, to influence that of his men, and inspire them with higher confidence. At all events, it was decided to abandon the city that very night.

20 The general's first care was to provide for the safe transportation of the treasure. Many of the common soldiers had converted their share of the prize, as we have seen, into gold chains, collars, or other ornaments, which they easily carried about their persons. But the royal fifth, together with that of 25 Cortés himself, and much of the rich booty of the principal cavaliers, had been converted into bars and wedges of solid gold, and deposited in one of the strong apartments of the palace. Cortés delivered the share belonging to the Crown to the royal officers, assigning them one of the strongest horses, and a guard 30 of Castilian soldiers to transport it. Still, much of the treasure belonging both to the Crown and to individuals was necessarily abandoned, from the want of adequate means of conveyance. The metal lay scattered in shining heaps along the floor, exciting the cupidity of the soldiers. "Take what you will of it," said 35 Cortés to his men. "Better you should have it than these Mexican honnds. But be careful not to overload yourselves. He travels safest in the dark night who travels lightest." His own more wary followers took heed to his counsel, helping themselves to a few articles of least bulk, though, it might be, of greatest 40 value. But the troops of Narvaez, pining for riches, of which

they had heard so much, and hitherto seen so little, showed no such discretion. To them it seemed as if the very mines of Mexico were turned up before them, and, rushing on the treacherous spoil, they greedily loaded themselves with as much of it, not merely as they could accommodate about their persons, but 5 as they could stow away in wallets, boxes, or any other mode of conveyance at their disposal.

Cortés next arranged the order of march. The van, composed of two hundred Spanish foot, he placed under the command of the valiant Gonzalo de Sandoval, supported by Diego de Ordaz, 10 Francisco de Lugo, and about twenty other cavaliers. The rearguard, constituting the strength of the infantry, was intrusted to Pedro de Alvarado, and Velasquez de Leon. The general himself took charge of the "battle," or centre, in which went the baggage, some of the heavy guns, most of which, however, 15 remained in the rear, the treasure, and the prisoners. These consisted of a son and two daughters of Montezuma, Cacama, the deposed lord of Tozeuco, and several other nobles, whom Cortés retained as important pledges in his future negotiations with the enemy. The Tlascalans were distributed pretty equally 20 among the three divisions; and Cortés had under his immediate command a hundred picked soldiers, his own veterans most attached to his service, who, with Christoval de Olid, Francisco de Morla, Alonso de Avila, and two or three other cavaliers, formed a select corps, to act wherever occasion might require. 25

The general had already superintended the construction of a portable bridge to be laid over the open canals in the causeway. This was given in charge to an officer named Magarino, with forty soldiers under his orders, all pledged to defend the passage to the last extremity. The bridge was to be taken up when 30 the entire army had crossed one of the breaches, and transported to the next. There were three of these openings in the causeway, and most fortunate would it have been for the expedition if the foresight of the commander had provided the same number of bridges. But the labour would have been great, and time 35 was short.

At midnight the troops were under arms, in readiness for the march. Mass was performed by father Olmedo, who invoked the protection of the Almighty through the awful perils of the night. The gates were thrown open, and, on the first of July, 40

1520, the Spaniards for the last time sallied forth from the walls of the ancient fortress, the scene of so much suffering and such indomitable courage.

The night was cloudy, and a drizzling rain, which fell without  
5 intermission, added to the obscurity. The great square before the palace was deserted, as, indeed, it had been since the fall of Montezuma. Steadily, and as noiselessly as possible, the Spaniards held their way along the great street of Tlacopan, which so lately had resounded to the tumult of battle. All was now  
10 hushed in silence; and they were only reminded of the past by the occasional presence of some solitary corpse, or a dark heap of the slain, which too painfully told where the strife had been hottest. As they passed along the lanes and alleys which opened into the great street, or looked down the canals, whose polished  
15 surface gleamed with a sort of ebony lustre through the obscurity of night, they easily fancied that they discerned the shadowy forms of their foe lurking in ambush, and ready to spring on them. But it was only fancy; and the city slept undisturbed even by the prolonged echoes of the tramp of the horses, and  
20 the hoarse rumbling of the artillery and baggage trains. At length a lighter space beyond the dusky line of buildings showed the van of the army that it was emerging on the open causeway. They might well have congratulated themselves on having thus escaped the dangers of an assault in the city itself,  
25 and that a brief time would place them in comparative safety on the opposite shore.—But the Mexicans were not all asleep.

As the Spaniards drew near the spot where the street opened on the causeway, and were preparing to lay the portable bridge across the uncovered breach which now met their eyes, several  
30 Indian sentinels, who had been stationed at this, as at the other approaches to the city, took the alarm, and fled, rousing their countrymen by their cries. The priests, keeping their night watch on the summit of the *teocallis*, instantly caught the tidings and sounded their shells, while the huge drum in the desolate  
85 temple of the war-god sent forth those solemn tones, which, heard only in seasons of calamity, vibrated through every corner of the capital. The Spaniards saw that no time was to be lost. The bridge was brought forward and fitted with all possible expedition. Sandoval was the first to try its strength, and,  
40 riding across, was followed by his little body of chivalry, his

infantry, and Tlascalcan allies, who formed the first division of the army. Then came Cortés and his squadrons, with the baggage, ammunition wagons, and a part of the artillery. But before they had time to defile across the narrow passago, a gathering sound was heard, like that of a mighty forest agitated by the winds. It grew louder and louder, while on the dark waters of the lake was heard a splashing noise, as of many oars. Then came a few stones and arrows striking at random among the hurrying troops. They fell every moment faster and more furious, till they thickened into a terrible tempest, while the very heavens were rent with the yells and war-cries of myriads of combatants, who seemed all at once to be swarming over land and lake !

The Spaniards pushed steadily on through this arrowy sleet, though the barbarians, dashing their canoes against the sides of the causeway, clambered up and broke in upon their ranks. But the Christians, anxious only to make their escape, declined all combat except for self-preservation. The cavaliers, spurring forward their steeds, shook off their assailants, and rode over their prostrate bodies, while the men on foot with their good swords or the butts of their pieces drove them headlong again down the sides of the dike.

But the advance of several thousand men, marching, probably, on a front of not more than fifteen or twenty abreast, necessarily required much time, and the leading files had already reached the second breach in the causeway before those in the rear had entirely traversed the first. Here they halted ; as they had no means of effecting a passage, smarting all the while under unintermitting volleys from the enemy, who were clustered thick on the waters around this second opening. Scarcely distressed, the vanguard sent repeated messages to the rear to demand the portable bridge. At length the last of the army had crossed, and Magarino and his sturdy followers endeavoured to raise the ponderous framework. But it stuck fast in the sides of the dike. In vain they strained every nerve. The weight of so many men and horses, and above all of the heavy artillery, had wedged the timbers so firmly in the stones and earth, that it was beyond their power to dislodge them. Still they laboured amidst a torrent of missiles, until, many of them slain, and all wounded, they were obliged to abandon the attempt.

The tidings soon spread from man to man, and no sooner was their dreadful import comprehended, than a cry of despair arose, which for a moment drowned all the noise of conflict. All means of retreat were cut off. Scarcely hope was left. The only hope was in such desperate exertions as each could make for himself. Order and subordination were at an end. Intense danger produced intense selfishness. Each thought only of his own life. Pressing forward, he trampled down the weak and the wounded, heedless whether it were friend or foe. The leading files, urged on by the rear, were crowded on the brink of the gulf. Sandoval, Orlaz, and the other cavaliers dashed into the water. Some succeeded in swimming their horses across; others failed, and some, who reached the opposite bank, being overturned in the ascent, rolled headlong with their steeds into the lake. The infantry followed pellmell, heaped promiscuously on one another, frequently pierced by the shafts, or struck down by the war-clubs of the Aztecs; while many an unfortunate victim was dragged half-stunned on board their canoes, to be reserved for a protracted but more dreadful death.

The carnage raged fearfully along the length of the causeway. Its shadowy bulk presented a mark of sufficient distinctness for the enemy's missiles, which often prostrated their own countrymen in the blind fury of the tempest. Those nearest the dike, running their canoes alongside, with a force that shattered them to pieces, leaped on the land and grappled with the Christians, until both came rolling down the side of the causeway together. But the Aztec fell among his friends, while his antagonist was borne away in triumph to the sacrifice. The struggle was long and deadly. The Mexicans were recognized by their white cotton tunics, which showed faint through their darkness. Above the combatants rose a wild and discordant clamour, in which horrid shouts of vengeance were mingled with groans of agony, with invocations of the saints and the blessed Virgin, and with the screams of women; for there were several women, both native and Spaniards, who had accompanied the Christian camp. Among these, one named Maria de Estrada is particularly noticed for the courage she displayed, battling with broadsword and target like the staunchest of the warriors.

The opening in the causeway, meanwhile, was filled up with

the wreck of matter which had been forced into it, ammunition-wagons, heavy guns, bales of rich stuffs scattered over the waters, chests of solid ingots, and bodies of men and horses, till over this dismal ruin a passage was gradually formed, by which those in the rear were enabled to clamber to the other side. Cortés, 5 it is said, found a place that was fordable, where halting with the water up to his saddle-girths, he endeavoured to check the confusion, and lead his followers by a safer path to the opposite bank. But his voice was lost in the wild uproar, and finally, hurrying on with the tide, he pressed forwards with a few 10 trusty cavaliers, who remained near his person, to the van; but not before he had seen his favourite page, Juan de Salazar, struck down a corpse by his side. Here he found Sandoval and his companions, halting before the third and last breach, endeavouring to cheer on their followers to surmount it. But 15 their resolution faltered. It was wide and deep; though the passage was not so closely beset by the enemy as the preceding ones. The cavaliers again set the example by plunging into the water. Horse and foot followed as they could, some swimming, others with dying grasp clinging to the manes and tails 20 of the struggling animals. Those fared best, as the general had predicted, who travelled lightest; and many were the unfortunate wretches, who, weighed down by the fatal gold which they loved so well, were buried with it in the salt floods of the lake. Cortés, with his gallant comrades, Olid, Morla, Sandoval, 25 and some few others, still kept in the advance, leading his broken remnant off the fatal causeway. The din of battle lessened in the distance; when the rumour reached them, that the rear-guard would be wholly overwhelmed without speedy relief. It seemed almost an act of desperation; but the generous hearts 30 of the Spanish cavaliers did not stop to calculate danger when the cry for succour reached them. Turning their horses' bridles, they galloped back to the theatre of action, worked their way through the press, swam the canal, and placed themselves in the thick of the *mêlée* on the opposite bank. 35

The first grey of the morning was now coming over the waters. It showed the hideous confusion of the scene which had been shrouded in the obscurity of night. The dark masses of combatants, stretching along the dike, were seen struggling for mastery, until the very causeway on which they stood appeared 40

to tremble, and reel to and fro, as if shaken by an earthquake; while the bosom of the lake, as far as the eye could reach, was darkened by canoes crowded with warriors, whose spears and bludgeons, armed with blades of "volcanic glass," gleamed in 5 the morning light.

The cavaliers found Alvarado unhorred, and defending himself with a poor handful of followers against an overwhelming tide of the enemy. His good steed, which had borne him through many a hard fight, had fallen under him. He was himself 10 wounded in several places, and was striving in vain to rally his scattered column, which was driven to the verge of the canal by the fury of the enemy, then in possession of the whole rear of the causeway, where they were reinforced every hour by fresh combatants from the city. The artillery in the earlier part 15 of the engagement had not been idle, and its iron shower, sweeping along the dike, had mowed down the assailants by hundreds. But nothing could resist their impetuosity. The front ranks, pushed on by those behind, were at length forced up to the pieces, and, pouring over them like a torrent, overthrew men 20 and guns in one general ruin. The resolute charge of the Spanish cavaliers, who had now arrived, created a temporary check, and gave time for their countrymen to make a feeble rally. But they were speedily borne down by the returning flood. Cortés and his companions were compelled to plunge again into the 25 lake,—though all did not escape. Alvarado stood on the brink for a moment, hesitating what to do. Unhorsed as he was, to throw himself into the water in the face of the hostile canoes that now swarmed around the opening, afforded but a desperate chance of safety. He had but a second for thought. He was 30 a man of powerful frame, and despair gave him unnatural energy. Setting his long lance firmly on the wreck which strewed the bottom of the lake, he sprung forward with all his might, and cleared the wide gap at a leap! Aztecs and Tlascalans gazed in stupid amazement, exclaiming, as they beheld the incredible 35 feat, "This is truly the *Tonatiuh*,—the child of the Sun!"—The breadth of the opening is not given. But it was so great, that the valorous captain Diaz, who well remembered the place, says the leap was impossible to any man. Other contemporaries, however, do not discredit the story. It was, beyond doubt, 40 matter of popular belief at the time; it is to this day familiarly



known to every inhabitant of the capital; and the name of the *Salto de Alvarado*, "Alvarado's leap," given to the spot, still commemorates an exploit which rivalled those of the demi-gods of Grecian fable.

Cortés and his companions now rode forward to the front, 5 where the troops, in a loose, disorderly manner, were marching off the fatal causeway. A few only of the enemy hung on their rear, or annoyed them by occasional flights of arrows from the lake. The attention of the Aztecs was diverted by the rich spoil that strewed the battle-ground; fortunately for the 10 Spaniards, who, had their enemy pursued with the same ferocity with which he had fought, would, in their crippled condition have been cut off, probably to a man. But little molested, therefore, they were allowed to defile through the adjacent village, or suburbs, it might be called, of Popotla. 15

The Spanish commander there dismounted from his jaded steed, and, sitting down on the steps of an Indian temple, gazed mournfully on the broken files as they passed before him. What a spectacle did they present! The cavalry, most of them dismounted, were mingled with the infantry, who dragged their 20 feeble limbs along with difficulty; their shattered mail and tattered garments dripping with the salt ooze, showing through their rents many a bruise and ghastly wound; their bright arms soiled, their proud crests and banners gone, the baggage, artillery,—all, in short, that constitutes the pride and panoply of 25 glorious war, for ever lost. Cortés, as he looked wistfully on their thinned and disordered ranks, sought in vain for many a familiar face, and missed more than one dear companion who had stood side by side with him through all the perils of the Conquest. Though accustomed to control his emotions, or, at 30 least, to conceal them, the sight was too much for him. He covered his face with his hands, and the tears which trickled down revealed too plainly the anguish of his soul.

He found some consolation, however, in the sight of several of the cavaliers on whom he most relied. Alvarado, Sandoval, 35 Olid, Ordaz, Avila, were yet safe. He had the inexpressible satisfaction, also, of learning the safety of the Indian interpreter, Marina, so dear to him, and so important to the army. She had been committed with a daughter of a Tlascalan chief, to several of that nation. She was fortunately placed in the van, and 40

her faithful escort had carried her securely through all the dangers of the night. Aguilar, the other interpreter, had also escaped; and it was with no less satisfaction that Cortés learned the safety of the ship-builder, Martin Lopez. The general's solicitude for the fate of this man, so indispensable, as he proved, to the success of his subsequent operations, showed that amidst all his affliction, his indomitable spirit was looking forward to the hour of vengeance.

Meanwhile, the advancing column had reached the neighbouring city of Tlaxcapan (Tlacah), once the capital of an independent principality. There it halted in the great street, as if bewildered and altogether uncertain what course to take; like a herd of panic-struck deer, who, flying from the hunters, with the cry of bound and horn still ringing in their ears, look wildly around for some glen or copse in which to plunge for concealment. Cortés, who had hastily mounted and rode on to the front again, saw the danger of remaining in a populous place, where the inhabitants might sorely annoy the troops from the assere, with little risk to themselves. Pushing forward, therefore, he soon led them into the country. There he endeavoured to reform his disorganized battalions, and bring them to something like order.

Hard by, at no great distance on the left, rose an eminence, looking towards a chain of mountains which fenced in the Valley on the west. It was called the Hill of Otoucalpoco, and sometimes the Hill of Montezuma. It was crowned with an Indian *teocalli*, with its large outworks of stone covering an ample space, and by its strong position, which commanded the neighbouring plain, promised a good place of refuge for the exhausted troops. But the men, disheartened and stupefied by their late reverses, seemed for the moment incapable of further exertion; and the place was held by a body of armed Indians. Cortés saw the necessity of dislodging them, if he would save the remains of his army from entire destruction. The event showed he still held a control over their wills stronger than circumstances themselves. Cheering them on, and supported by his gallant cavaliers, he succeeded in infusing into the most sluggish something of his own intrepid temper, and led them up the ascent in face of the enemy. But the latter made slight resistance, and, after a few feeble volleys of missiles which did little injury, left the ground to the assailants.

It was covered by a building of considerable size, and furnished ample accommodations for the diminished numbers of the Spaniards. They found there some provisions; and more, it is said, were brought to them in the course of the day from some friendly Otomie villages in the neighbourhood. There was, 5 also, a quantity of fuel in the courts, destined to the uses of the temple. With this they made fires to dry their drenched garments, and busily employed themselves in dressing one another's wounds, stiff and extremely painful from exposure and long exertion. Thus refreshed, the weary soldiers threw themselves 10 down on the floor and courts of the temple, and soon found the temporary oblivion which Nature seldom denies even in the greatest extremity of suffering.

There was one eye in the assembly, however, which we may well believe did not so speedily close. For what agitating 15 thoughts must have crowded on the mind of their commander, as he beheld his poor remnant of followers thus huddled together in this miserable bivouac! And this was all that survived of the brilliant array with which but a few weeks since he had entered the capital of Mexico! Where now were his dreams of 20 conquest and empire? And what was he but a luckless adventurer, at whom the finger of scorn would be uplifted as a madman? Whichever way he turned, the horizon was almost equally gloomy, with scarcely one light spot to cheer him. He had still a weary journey before him, through perilous and unknown 25 paths, with guides of whose fidelity he could not be assured. And how could he rely on his reception at Tlascala, the place of his destination; the land of his ancient enemies; where, formerly as a foe, and now as a friend, he had brought desolation to every family within its borders? 30

Yet these agitating and gloomy reflections, which might have crushed a common mind, had no power over that of Cortés; or rather, they only served to renew his energies, and quicken his perceptions, as the war of the elements purifies and gives elasticity to the atmosphere. He looked with an unblenching eye 35 on his past reverses; but, confident in his own resources, he saw a light through the gloom which others could not. Even in the shattered relics which lay around him, resembling in their haggard aspect and wild attire a horde of famished outlaws, he discerned the materials out of which to reconstruct his ruined fortunes. In 40

the very hour of discomfiture and general despondency, there is no doubt that his heroic spirit was meditating the plan of operations which he afterwards pursued with such dauntless constancy.

The loss sustained by the Spaniards on this fatal night, like every other event in the history of the Conquest, is reported with the greatest discrepancy. If we believe Cortés' own letter, it did not exceed one hundred and fifty Spaniards and two thousand Indians. But the general's bulletins, while they do full justice to the difficulties to be overcome, and the importance of the results, are less scrupulous in stating the extent either of his means or of his losses. Thom Cano, one of the cavaliers present, estimates the slain at eleven hundred and seventy Spaniards, and eight thousand allies. But this is a greater number than we have allowed for the whole army. Perhaps we may come nearest the truth by taking the computation of Gomara, the chaplain of Cortés, who had free access doubtless, not only to the general's papers, but to other authentic sources of information. According to him, the number of Christians killed and missing was four hundred and fifty, and that of natives four thousand. This, with the loss sustained in the conflicts of the previous week, may have reduced the former to something more than a third, and the latter to a fourth, or, perhaps, fifth, of the original force with which they entered the capital. The brunt of the action fell on the rear guard, few of whom escaped. It was formed chiefly of the soldiers of Narvaez, who fell the victims in some measure of their cupidity. Forty-six of the cavalry were cut off, which with previous losses reduced the number in this branch of the service to twenty-three, and some of these in very poor condition. The greater part of the treasure, the baggage, the general's papers, including his accounts, and a minute diary of transactions since leaving Cuba—which, to posterity at least, would have been of more worth than the gold,—had been swallowed up by the waters. The ammunition, the beautiful little train of artillery, with which Cortés had entered the city, were all gone. Not a musket even remained, the men having thrown them away, eager to disencumber themselves of all that might retard their escape on that disastrous night. Nothing, in short, of their military apparatus was left, but their swords, their crippled cavalry, and a few damaged crossbows, to assert the superiority of the European over the barbarian.

The prisoners, including, as already noticed, the children of Montezuma and the cacique of Tezenoo, all perished by the hands of their ignorant countrymen, it is said, in the indiscriminate fury of the assault. There were, also, some persons of consideration among the Spaniards, whose names were inscribed 5 on the same bloody roll of slaughter. Such was Francisco do Morla, who fell by the side of Cortés, on returning with him to the rescue. But the greatest loss was that of Juan Velasquez de Leon, who, with Alvarado, had command of the rear. It was the post of danger on that night, and he fell, bravely defend- 10 ing it, at an early part of the retreat. He was an excellent officer, possessed of many knightly qualities, though somewhat haughty in his bearing, being one of the best connected cavaliers in the army. The near relation of the governor of Cuba, he looked coldly, at first, on the pretensions of Cortés; but, whether 15 from a conviction that the latter had been wronged, or from personal preference, he afterwards attached himself zealously to his leader's interests. The general requited this with a generous confidence, assigning him, as we have seen, a separate and independent command, where misconduct, or even a mistake 20 would have been fatal to the expedition. Velasquez proved himself worthy of the trust; and there was no cavalier in the army, with the exception, perhaps, of Sandoval and Alvarado, whose loss would have been so deeply deplored by the commander. Such were the disastrous results of this terrible passage 25 of the causeway; more disastrous than those occasioned by any other reverse which has stained the Spanish arms in the New World; and which has branded the night on which it happened, in the national annals, with the name of the *noche triste*, "the sad or melancholy night."

## PRESCOTT'S LIFE OF CHARLES THE FIFTH.

—:o:—

### CHARLES'S LIFE AT YUSTE.

THE emperor's dwelling at Yuste, notwithstanding it had been contrived by one of the best architects in Spain, had little pretensions to the name of "palace," by which the monkish chroniclers, in their reverence for its occupant, are wont to distinguish it. It was a simple structure, of very moderate dimensions, and stood on the steep side of the mountain, with its back against the southern wall of the monastery. It consisted of only eight rooms, four on each floor, which were of a uniform size, being twenty-five feet long by twenty broad. They all opened into corridors, that crossed the building and terminated in two deep porticos, or galleries, that flanked it on the east and west. These led out upon terraces, for which the sloping land was eminently favourable, and which the emperor afterwards embellished with flowers, fountains, and fish-ponds, fed by the streams from the surrounding hills. From the western terrace a gently sloping path, suited to the monarch's feeble limbs, led to the garden, which spread out below the house. This was of considerable extent; and a high wall, which enclosed it, separated it from the domain of the monks. A small part of it was reserved for raising the vegetables for the royal table. The remainder was laid out as a pleasure-ground, with parterres of flowers, and pleasant walks shaded with orange, citron, and mulberry-trees, that in this sheltered spot, screened from the rude winds of the north, grew as luxuriantly as in a more southern latitude. One of these alleys led to a light and tasteful summer-house, the ruins of which may be detected by the traveller among the rubbish that covers the ground at the present day. Another walk, bordered with cypresses, led to a gate which opened into the neighbouring forest, where two cows were pastured that supplied milk for the emperor's dairy.

Charles took for his bed-chamber the north-eastern room on the second floor, contiguous to the chapel, which, indeed, was the

part of the monastery against which his mansion was erected. The apartment was so situated that a window, or glass-door, opened from it directly into the chancel, giving him, while he lay in bed, a complete view of the high altar, and enabling him, when confined to his chamber, to take part in the service. In the opposite corner of the building was the cabinet where he passed the day in transacting business, which still followed him to Yuste, and in receiving envoys and visitors who came to pay their respects to him in his retirement.

The northern chambers must have been dark and dreary, with no light but what found its way under the deep porticos that protected the sides of the dwelling. But on the south the rooms lay open to the sun, and looked pleasantly down upon the garden. Here the vines, clambering up the walls, hung their coloured tassels around the casements, and the white blossoms of the orange-trees, as they were shaken by the breeze, filled the apartment with delicious odours. From the windows the eye of the monarch ranged over a magnificent prospect. Far above rose the bold peaks of the sierra, dark with its forests of chestnut and oak, while below, for many a league, was spread out the luxuriant savanna, like a sea of verdure, its gay colours contrasting with the savage character of the scenery that surrounded it. Charles, who had an eye for the beautiful in nature, as well as in art, loved to gaze upon this landscape; and in the afternoon he would frequently take his seat in the western gallery, when warm with the rays of the declining sun, as it was sinking in glory behind the mountains.

Charles, as we have seen, was careful to guard himself against cold, always travelling with his stove, and causing chimneys to be built in houses where he prolonged his residence. We may be sure that he did not omit this practice in a place like Yuste, where the dampness of the atmosphere rendered fireplaces, although little in vogue among the natives, as important as in a colder region. He had chimneys constructed for every room in the house. Indeed, he seemed to possess the constitution of a salamander, and usually kept his apartments in a sort of furnace heat, by no means agreeable to his household. With all this, and with the further appliances of furs and wrappings of eider-down, he would often complain, especially when the gout was on him, that he was chilled to the bone.

inventory of his effects, prepared by Qnixada and Glaztelu soon after their master's death. Among the items we find carpets from Turkey and Alcaraz, canopies of velvet and other stuffs, hangings of fine black cloth, which, since his mother's death, he had always chosen for his own bedroom; while the remaining 5 apartments were provided with no less than twenty-five suits of tapestry, from the looms of Flanders, richly embroidered with figures of animals and with landscapes. Instead of the crazy seat that is spoken of, we find, besides a number of sofas and chairs of carved walnut, half a dozen arm-chairs covered 10 with black velvet and two others, of a more elaborate workmanship, for the emperor's special use. One of these was garnished with six cushions and a footstool, for the accommodation of his tender joints, and the other well stuffed and provided with handles, by which, without annoyance to himself, he could be borne 15 out upon the terrace, where, in fine weather, he often preferred to take his repasts. The accommodations of his sleeping apartment showed an equal attention to his personal comfort; for, besides two beds, of different dimensions, we find such an ample supply of bolsters, pillows, blankets, and bed-gear of all descrip- 20 tions, as would have rejoiced the heart of the most ambitious house-keeper.

With the article of plate, he was no less generously provided, though we are assured by the authorities above quoted, that he had but three or four pieces, and those of the plainest pattern. 25 The service of his oratory was uncommonly ample, and was mostly of silver-gilt. His table service was also of silver, as were the articles for his toilet, the vases, the pitchers, the basins, and even the humblest utensil in his bed-chamber. The vessels in his apothecary's room were of the same precious material, 30 as well as most of the articles in the pantry and the kitchen. Among the different pieces of plate we find some of pure gold, and others specially noted for their curious workmanship; and as this was an age in which the art of working the precious metals was carried to the highest perfection, we cannot doubt that 35 some of the finest specimens had come into the emperor's possession. The whole amount of plate was estimated at between twelve and thirteen thousand ounces in weight.

The emperor's inventory makes no great display of jewels. Such trinkets, worthless in the monastery, he left to those who had 40



still their showy parts to play on the theatre of the world. He brought with him, however, a number of richly mounted caskets of gold, silver, and enamel, containing different articles which still had value in his eyes. Among these were several collars and badges of the Golden Fleece, the proud Burgundian order of which the Spanish sovereign was now the head. But most of these jewelled coffers were filled with relics or amulets. Among the former was a bit of the true cross. It afterwards passed as a precious legacy to Philip; as did also the contents of another casket, a crucifix which his mother, the Empress Isabella, had in her hands in the hour of death, and which was afterwards to solace the last moments of her husband and her son. The other boxes were chiefly devoted to talismans, which the superstition of the times had invested with marvellous properties for warding off disease. There were stones set in gold, sure styptics for stopping blood; nine English rings, a specific against cramp; a blue stone, richly chased, for expelling the gout; four bezoar stones, in gold settings, of singular efficacy in curing the plague; and other charms of the same kind. It may surprise one that a person of so strong a mind as Charles the Fifth should have yielded so far to the popular superstition as to put faith in such trumpery. That he did so is evident from the care with which he preserved these amulets, and from his sending one of them—a bezoar stone—to his chamberlain, Van Mele, when supposed to be ill of the plague. Yet this should not be set down so much to superstition as to the credulity which grew out of an ignorance of the real properties of matter,—an ignorance which the emperor shared with the best instructed men of the age, who, in whatever related to physical sciences, were constantly betrayed into errors of which a schoolboy at the present day would be ashamed.

There was one decoration for his dwelling which the abdicated monarch brought with him to Yuste, of more worth than his plate or his jewels. This was a small but choice collection of pictures, some of which rank as the noblest master-pieces of art. They were variously painted, on canvas, wood, and stone, mostly of the size of life, and hung in rich frames round the walls of his apartments. Some were in miniature, and among these were no less than three of the empress; while an elaborate altar-piece, displaying pictures of the Virgin and the Child,

was ornamented with gold medallions that contained likenesses of the different members of the imperial family.

But the gems of the collection were eight paintings from the pencil of Titian. Charles was a true lover of art, and, for a crowned head, no contemptible connoisseur. He fully appreciated the merits of the great Venetian, had him often near his person at the court, and at all times delighted to do homage to his genius. There is a story that, on one occasion, the monarch picked up a pencil which Titian had dropped while painting, and restored it to him, saying that "so great an artist should be served by an emperor." This is too like some well-attested anecdotes of Charles to be rejected as altogether improbable. However this may be, he showed his estimation of the artist by conferring on him the honour of knighthood, and by assigning him a yearly pension on the revenues of Naples, of two hundred gold crowns. He may be thought to have done some violence to his nature, moreover, by never paying him a less sum than eight hundred crowns for each of his portraits. There were several of himself at Yuste, from the hand of Titian; one a full-length, representing the emperor in complete mail. He was painted many times by the Venetian artist; for it was by his pencil that he desired his likeness should be transmitted to posterity. He had his wish. Some of these portraits are among the best productions of Italian art; and the emperor lives immortal on the canvas of Titian, no less than in the pages of history.

There are several pictures also of the empress by the same master; and others of Philip and the different members of the royal family. But the most remarkable in the collection, and one that Charles had caused to be painted a few years before, that he might take it with him to his retreat, was the celebrated "Gloria" in which he appears with the empress in the midst of the heavenly host, and supported by angels, in an attitude of solemn adoration. This superb picture, which, after the monarch's death, accompanied his remains to the Escorial, is reported by tradition to have been placed over the great altar in the church of Yuste. That this was the case is rendered probable by the size of the painting, which made it better suited to a church than private apartment. In the space above the altar, Charles could, moreover, readily see it through the window

way through the Dark Ages. A copy of Cæsar's Commentaries graced the shelves. But it was in an Italian translation, as Charles had a very imperfect knowledge of Latin. He took more pleasure in the Commentaries of his friend the Grand Commander Avila, which celebrated the wars in Germany in 5 which the emperor played the principal part.

But the work which had the greatest interest for the monarch was a French poem, "*Le Chevalier Délibéré*," which had great success in its way. It is chiefly devoted to celebrating the glories of the house of Burgundy, and especially that prince of 10 fire-eaters, Charles the Bold. The emperor, pleased with the work, and the more so, no doubt, that it commemorated the achievements of his own ancestral line, had formerly amused his leisure hours by turning it into Spanish. He afterwards employed his chamberlain, William Van Male, to revise it, and 15 correct the style for him. Thus purified, it was handed over to a poet of the court, named Acuña, who forthwith did it into set Castilian verso.

Van Male, the chamberlain, who had thus performed the same office for his master which Voltaire used to intimate he had 20 rendered to Frederic the Great, by saying he had washed out the king's dirty linen, was a person who held too important a place in the emperor's household to be passed over in silence. He was born in Flanders, of an ancient but decayed family. He early followed the wars, and took service under the duke of 25 Alva. But the profession of arms was not suited to his quiet and studious tastes; and when peace came, he quitted the army, with the design of entering the church. The poor gentleman, however, had no patron to push him forward in the path of preferment, and, satisfied of this, he gladly embraced an offer, 30 which he obtained through the interest of Charles's minister, De Praedt, of the post of chamberlain in the imperial household.

In his new situation Van Male was necessarily brought into close relations with his master, to whom his various accomplish- 35 ments enabled him to render other services than those strictly demanded by his office. When Charles's fingers were too much crippled by gout to hold the pen, the chamberlain acted as his secretary, and sometimes wrote his despatches. If the monarch, oppressed with care, or tormented by bodily pain, was unable 40

to compose himself to sleep, Van Male beguiled the time by reading aloud to him; and many a weary hour, and often far into the night, did the chamberlain stand by his master's bedside, engaged in this unenviable office. It was in such intervals  
5 as he could snatch, during this occupation, that he wrote those letters to his friend the minister De Praedt, which have recently been published, and which throw many gleams of light on the emperor's personal character and way of life. In their constant intercourse, Van Male's guileless character, his integrity, and  
10 his amiable disposition, won the regard of his master, who seems to have honoured him with a greater degree of confidence than any other of his household, except Quixada. But for all that, and notwithstanding the important services which he received from him, Charles did little for the advancement of  
15 the chamberlain's fortunes. When the latter announced that he was about to marry, the emperor looked graciously on the plan, and favoured him with some prudent counsels in regard to his housekeeping. The simple-hearted chamberlain overflowed with gratitude at this mark of condescension, which he  
20 does not fail to communicate in his letters to De Praedt. But these prudent counsels were all that Charles had to give him. At length the time came when the emperor could be generous to Van Male, and that without any cost to himself.

He determined to present him with the manuscript containing  
25 the Castilian version of the "*Chevalier Délibéré*," and to have a large edition of it struck off at once. This was to be done at the chamberlain's expense, who would be abundantly remunerated by the sale of the poem. "It will put five hundred gold crowns into his pocket," exclaimed a wicked wag, the  
30 historian Avila. "And William is well entitled to them," said the emperor, "for he has sweat hard over the work." But the subject of the royal bounty took a very different view of the matter. Nothing seemed certain to him but the cost,—especially as Charles positively declined to propitiate the public by making  
35 known the part which he had taken in the composition of the work. It was in vain that the poor chamberlain protested. His master would not be balked in his generous purpose, and in that same year, 1555, an edition of two thousand copies of the book appeared from the press of Jean Steeltz, in Antwerp.  
40 Whether the result justified the ominous presages of Van Male,

we are not told. He was one of the Flemings who followed their master to Yuste. He survived him but two years; and, as there was no appearance that his affairs were in a very flourishing condition at the time of his own death, we have no reason to suppose that the manuscript of the "*Caballero 5* *Determinado*" proved a gold mine to him. Charles had brought with him to Yuste two copies of the epic, which he probably regarded with more complacency than that with which they were viewed by Van Male. One was in the original French, the other in the Castilian version, and both were ornamented with 10 coloured drawings, and richly bound in crimson velvet with clasps and corners of silver, like many of the other books in the collection.

The imperial household consisted of about fifty persons,—a number not greater than belonged to the family of many a 15 private gentleman. But the titles of some of the officials intimated the state maintained in the establishment. There was the major-domo, the almoner, the physician, the apothecary, the secretary, four gentlemen of the chamber, the keeper of the wardrobe, and the like. There were also cooks, confectioners, 20 fruiterers, bakers, brewers, gamekeepers, and a number of menials for the inferior offices. Charles, as we have seen, had been disappointed in not being able to retain the services of some of the more distinguished Flemings in his monastic retreat. Their attachment to their master was not strong enough to 25 make them renounce the world, and bury themselves in the solitudes of Yuste. With the exception, therefore, of a few men of family and education, who filled the higher posts, the establishment was made up of illiterate persons, suited to the humblest station. Even one of the chamberlains, as we gather 30 from the emperor's will, was unable either to read or write.

The emperor's family was variously distributed. Quixada, Gazteln, Moren, keeper of the wardrobe, and some others of the principal attendants, were lodged in the neighbouring village of Cuneos, half a league from the monastery,—a place, as the 35 secretary pathetically complains, "even worse than Yuste." Much the greater number found accommodations in a part of the new cloisters, to which the avenues from the rest of the monastery were carefully closed, while easy communications were opened with "the palace." Thus the emperor's establish- 40

ment was, in the words of Mignet, complete in itself, supplying him not only with all that was required in the way of personal service, but with whatever was necessary for his use,—from the bread for his table to the various medicines for his maladies ; 5 from the wine and beer of his cellar to the wax-lights for his oratory.

The salaries of the attendants varied according to the nature of their services. Quixada, as head of the establishment, was to receive the same yearly stipend with that assigned to the 10 marquis of Decia, who had held the post of chamberlain in Queen Joanna's household. The amount is not stated. Gaztelu, the secretary, and Mathys, the physician, received each seven hundred and fifty florins a year. Moron had four hundred florins, as master of the wardrobe ; Torriano, the mechanician, 15 three hundred and fifty ; Van Male, and the other chamberlains of the first class, three hundred each. The whole amount of the wages somewhat exceeded ten thousand florins.

Charles had estimated his probable expenses at about sixteen thousand gold ducats a-year. He found, however, that he should 20 require twenty thousand ; and he ordered the secretary Vazquez to remit to him that amount, in quarterly payments of five thousand each. Gaztelu urged the importance of punctuality in the remittances ; for "the emperor," he said, "is the man of all others who requires to be served with punctuality ; and 25 the least want of it causes him the greatest annoyance." One might have thought that the lord of Spain and the Indies would have long been familiar with such sources of annoyance.

The abdicated monarch had reserved for himself the proceeds of certain taxes called *los seis y onze al millar*, and a right in 30 the mines of Guadalcana. These, which were of silver, and situated in the south, not far from Cordova, were of daily increasing value ; though it was not till some years later, when leased to the Fuggers of Augsburg, that their productiveness was fully established. Besides these sources of revenue, Charles 35 had laid aside for himself thirty thousand gold ducats, which he deposited in the fortress of Simancas. His daughter, Joanna, more than once, when hard pushed for money for the public service, tried to persuade him to allow her to borrow from this hoard on the faith of the national credit. But her father, who 40 knew from experience that government paper was by no means

as good as gold, turned a deaf ear to the application, and kept his treasure untouched to the day of his death.

Charles's way of life at Yuste was of that regular kind to have been expected in one who lived in the atmosphere of a convent. He rose early and immediately breakfasted. His 5 stomach abhorred a vacuum, even for the shortest space of time. When the door was thrown open, his confessor, Father Juan de Regla, appeared. The history of this man affords one of the many examples of the wise policy with which the Catholic Church opens a career to talent and desert wherever 10 found, instead of making rank the only path to preferment. Regla was the son of a poor Aragonese peasant. While a lad, he went to Saragossa, where he lived for some time on charity, especially on the alms doled out at the convent gate of St. Engracia. He performed also some menial offices; and the 15 money he thus picked up he spent on books. The brethren of the convent aided him by their spiritual teachings, and by their recommendation of him to a wealthy patron, who gave him the charge of his sons in the university of Salamanca. Regla seems to have fully shared in all the advantages for education 20 afforded by this seat of science. He profited by them to the utmost, made himself well acquainted with the ancient tongues, especially Greek and Hebrew, and went still deeper into the canon law, as he had determined to devote himself to the church. At the age of thirty-six he entered the order of St. 25 Jerome, making his profession in the old, familiar convent of St. Engracia. He distinguished himself by the strictness with which he conformed to the discipline of the society. Though a subtle and dexterous casuist, he seems to have had no great success as a preacher. But he was the most popular confessor 30 in Saragossa. His learning and exemplary way of life, recommended by plausible manners, gradually acquired for him such consideration with the brotherhood, that he was raised to the office of prior in the very convent at whose gate he had once received charity.

35

The first term of his office had just expired, and he was about to be re-elected for another, when he received a summons to attend the emperor as his confessor at Yuste. However gratifying the appointment may have been to his feelings, he seems to have preferred to remain in the independent position 40

which he held as head of the Jeronymite monastery. At least, he showed no alacrity in complying with the summons. When at length he presented himself before the emperor, the latter, who had been impatient of his delay, inquired the cause of it; 5 to which the Jeronymito, with a downcast look, replied, "It was because he did not think himself worthy, or indeed qualified, to take [charge of his majesty's conscience." Charles, who perhaps did not give the monk credit for as much humility as he professed, told him to take courage; "for," said he, "I have 10 had five learned divines, who have been busy with my conscience for this year past in Flanders; and all with which you will have to concern yourself will be my life in Yuste."

The meek and austere deportment of the confessor soon established him in the good opinion of the monarch, who, in 15 one instance, showed him a singular proof of consideration. He not only allowed, but commanded Regla to be seated in his presence,—an act of condescension, which greatly scandalized the loyal Quixada, who regarded it in the light of an indignity that a poor friar should thus be placed on a level with his 20 august sovereign. Regla himself felt the awkwardness of his situation, for much the same etiquette was observed towards Charles in his retirement as when on the imperial throne. The monk saw the odium to which his master's favour would expose him; and on his knees he besought the emperor to allow him to 25 stand in his presence. "When any one enters the room, it makes me feel," said the poor man, "like a criminal on the scaffold, dressed in his *san-benito*." "Be in no pain about that," said Charles to him; "you are my father-confessor. I am glad that people should find you sitting when they come into the 30 room; and it does not displease me," he coolly added, "that you should change countenance sometimes at being found so."

Notwithstanding this show of deference to his confessor, or to the cloth, Regla soon found that humility was not a cardinal virtue of his royal penitent, and that, if he had resigned the 35 sceptre, he still retained a full measure of the imperious temper with which he had swayed it. On one occasion, the monk having gone on his own affairs to the neighbouring town of Plasencia, Charles, as soon as he learned it, sent a courier to order him back. "I would have you know, brother Juan," 40 said the emperor to him on his return, "that it is my pleasure



you go not hence without my express permission. You are not to quit me for a single moment," Regla, received the rebuko with patience, and from that hour never left the monastery so long as his master lived.

After the confessor had assisted Charles in his morning devo- 5 tions, the latter amused himself with some occupation,—often of a mechanical kind, for which he had a taste. His companion at these times was Torriano, the mechanician whom we have mentioned as forming one of the household. He was a native of Cremona, in Italy, a man of singular ingenuity, who after- 10 wards gained himself a name as an engineer by the construction of the celebrated hydraulic works of Toledo. He was well skilled in the manufacture of timepieces, and, as we have seen, made those elaborate clocks which adorned the apartments at Yuste. He was engaged, at this time, on an astronomical time- 15 piece of a most complicated construction, which required more than three years for its completion. Charles is said to have observed the progress of this curious piece of mechanism with great interest. He had brought with him to Yuste a number of watches made by the same hand. Pocket watches were a 20 great rarity at that period, for their invention was of recent date, going back no farther than the beginning of the century.

Charles had a passion for timepieces, though one might have thought that he would have cared little for the precise measurement of the hours as they glided away in the monoton- 25 ous routine of the monastery. The difficulty which he found in adjusting his clocks and watches is said to have drawn from the monarch a philosophical reflection on the absurdity of his having attempted to bring men to anything like uniformity of belief in matters of faith, when he could not make any two of 30 his timepieces agree with each other. But that he never reached the degree of philosophy required for such a reflection, is abundantly shown by more than one sentiment that fell from his pen, as well as his lips, during his residence at Yuste.

Charles had a turn for the mathematical sciences; and his 35 inventory contains a number of geometrical and other instruments, which he had brought with him to his retreat. In the catalogue we find, moreover, mention made of no less than thirty-six pairs of spectacles. He had a decided taste, and as it would seem, talent, for mechanical pursuits, and when in 40

Germany had invented a carriage for his own accommodation, in which he used to take his airings in the country. He would often amuse himself with Torriano in making little puppets,—soldiers performing their exercises, girls dancing, with their 5 tambourines, and, if the account be true, wooden birds that could fly in and out at the window!—all which, in the eyes of the simple monks, savoured of necromancy. But what satisfied them beyond a doubt that Torriano was an adept in the black art was his invention of a hand-mill small enough to be tucked 10 away in the sleeve of a friar, but of sufficient power to grind enough meal in a day to feed a man for a week. It may have been some such piece of witchcraft that furnished an argument for his prosecution afterwards by the Holy Office.

At ten o'clock some of the emperor's *ayudas de cámara* or 15 of his *barberos*,—gentlemen of the chamber of the first and second class,—came to assist him at his toilet. At noon he heard mass. When well enough, he always attended the service in person, occupying his place in the choir. At other times he would sit at his chamber-window, which, as we have seen, opened 20 on the chancel, where the clear, sonorous tones of his voice might be heard, mingling with those of the choristers below. He had a great fondness for music, and understood the principles of the art. When on the throne, the music of his chapel was unsurpassed by that of any church in Christendom. On his 25 coming to Yuste, the greatest pains had been taken to select for him the best voices from the different convents of the order. No person was admitted into the choir except those who regularly belonged to it. On one occasion a professional singer from Plasencia having joined in the chant, the unaccustomed tones 30 soon drew the emperor's attention; and the intruder was compelled to beat a hasty retreat. Charles had a quick ear; and, sometimes, when a false note jarred on it, he would break into a passion, and salute the offender with one of those scurrilous epithets which he had picked up in the wars, and which 35 were much better suited to a military life than to a monastic.

Immediately after mass he dined,—an important meal, which occupied much time with him always, at the convent as well as at the court. At Yuste, he still retained the unsocial privilege claimed by royalty of eating alone. He beguiled the time, 40 however, by conversing with some one of his household, who

was present during the repast. Sometimes it was Mathys, the physician, a man of science but who unfortunately did not possess the authority exercised by Sancho Panza's island-doctor, to order off the unwholesome dishes from the table. Sometimes it was the learned chamberlain, Van Male, who was present. 5 Frequently both remained; and the emperor conversed with them on different topics, usually those relating to science,—to anything but politics. The subject often turned on natural history, of which Charles was fond, when Pliny would, of course, be cited as a sovereign authority; and, if a passage chanced to 10 puzzle the disputants, the confessor—a good scholar, as we have seen—would sometimes be sent for to settle the dispute.

After dinner, the monk read to his master some portion of St. Bernard, or St. Jerome, pausing frequently while his auditor made a running commentary on the text; so that the exercise, 15 as the narrator adds, partook rather of the nature of “a sweet and heavenly communion.” At other times, the conversation turned on lighter and more familiar topics. Then came a short *siesta*; after which the emperor repaired to the church, where three days in the week he listened to a discourse from one of 20 his chaplains. There were three of those, men selected for their piety and learning from the different houses of the order. Among the number, Fray Francisco de Villalva was especially endowed with a rare and touching eloquence, which made him one of the most popular preachers of the day; and as his discourses found 25 great favour with Charles, he was selected to deliver the sermon much oftener than either of his brethren. Occasionally assistance was not refused from other quarters; and if any member of the order belonging to some other convent, who had a gift for preaching, happened to visit Yuste, he was invited to mount the 30 pulpit, and display his eloquence before the emperor. Whenever there was preaching, Charles made it a point to be present. If prevented by illness, or by the necessity of preparing despatches for Brussels or Valladolid, he expected to hear from his confessor on the same evening a full report of the discourse. 35

On the other afternoons of the week he listened to some portion of the Scriptures from Fray Bernardo de Salinas, a learned divine, who had received his degree of doctor from the University of Paris. The part most frequently selected for this exercise was the Epistle to the Romans, which the emperor 40

preferred, says a monkish historian, as containing the sum and substance of all the other epistles, and comprehending within itself all the sound doctrines and dogmas of the church. The remainder of the day he was occupied with such affairs as  
 5 claimed his attention. After vespers, and before retiring to rest, he refreshed himself with a supper, in which fish, dressed in some rich and unwholesome way, was pretty sure to make part of the repast.

---

## FREEMAN'S OLD ENGLISH HISTORY.

---

### THE REIGN OF KING ALFRED.

871—900.

We now come to our great King Alfred, the best and greatest  
 10 of all our Kings. We know quite enough of his history to be able to say that he really deserves to be so called, though I must warn you that, just because he left so great a name behind him, people have been fond of attributing to him things which really belonged to others. Thus you may sometimes see nearly  
 15 all our laws and customs attributed to Alfred, as if he had invented them all for himself. You will sometimes hear that Alfred founded Trial by Jury, divided England into Counties, and did all kinds of other things. Now the real truth is that the roots and beginnings of most of these things are very much  
 20 older than the time of Alfred, while the particular forms in which we have them now are very much later. But people have a way of fancying that everything must have been invented by some particular man, and as Alfred was more famous than anybody else, they hit upon Alfred as the most likely person  
 25 to have invented them. But, putting aside fables, there is quite enough to show that there have been very few Kings, and very few men of any sort, so great and good as King Alfred. Perhaps the only equally good King we read of is Saint Lewis of France; and though he was quite as good, we cannot set him  
 30 down as being so great and wise as Alfred. Certainly no King ever gave himself up more thoroughly than Alfred did

fully to do the duties of his office. His whole life seems to have been spent in doing all that he could for the good of his people in every way. And it is wonderful in how many ways his powers showed themselves. That he was a brave warrior is in itself no particular praise in an age when almost every man was the same. But it is a great thing for a prince, so large a part of whose time was spent in fighting, to be able to say that all his wars were waged to set free his country from the most cruel enemies. And we may admire too the wonderful way in which he kept his mind always straight 10 and firm, never either giving way to bad luck or being puffed up by good luck. We read of nothing like pride or cruelty or injustice of any kind either towards his own people or towards his enemies. And if he was a brave warrior, he was many other things besides. He was a lawgiver; at least he collected 15 and arranged the laws, and caused them to be most carefully administered. He was a scholar, and wrote and translated many books for the good of his people. He encouraged trade and enterprise of all kinds, and sent men to visit distant parts of the world, and bring home accounts of what they saw. 20 And he was a thoroughly good man and a devout Christian in all relations of life. In short, one hardly knows any other character in all history so perfect; there is so much that is good in so many different ways; and though no doubt Alfred had his faults like other people, yet he clearly had none, at any 25 rate in the greater part of his life, which took away at all seriously from his general goodness. One wonders that such a man was never canonized as a Saint; most certainly many people have received that name who did not deserve it nearly so well as he did.

30

Alfred, or, as his name should really be spelled, Ælfred, was the youngest son of King Æthelwulf, and was born at Wantage in Berkshire in 849. His mother was Osburh, the first, or perhaps the second, wife of Æthelwulf. She was the daughter of Osloe, the King's cup-bearer, who came of the royal house of 35 the Jutes in Wight. Now a story is told of Alfred and his mother which you may perhaps have heard already, and which is such a beautiful tale that I am really sorry to have to say that it cannot possibly be true. We are told that up to the age of twelve years Alfred was fond of hunting and other sports, 40

but that he had not been taught any sort of learning, not so much as to read his own tongue. But he loved the Old-English songs; and one day his mother had a beautiful book of songs with rich pictures and fine painted initial letters, such as you  
 5 may often see in ancient books. And she said to her children, "I will give this beautiful book to the one of you who shall first be able to read it." And Alfred said, "Mother, will you really give me the book when I have learned to read it?" And Osburh said, "Yea, my son." So Alfred went and found a master,  
 10 and soon learned to read. Then he came to his mother, and read the songs in the beautiful book and took the book for his own.

Now it is a great pity that so pretty a story cannot be true. And I must tell you why it cannot. Alfred was sent to Rome  
 15 to the Pope when he was four years old; and if the Pope took him as his "bishop-son," and anointed him to be King, one cannot help thinking that he would have him taught to read and to learn Latin. And it is quite certain that he could do both very well in after-life. Still this is not quite certain proof,  
 20 as he might have learned afterwards. But one thing is quite certain. Alfred was not twelve years old till 861. By that time his brothers were not children playing round their mother, but grown men and Kings, and two of them, Æthelstan and Æthelbald, were dead. Moreover in 861 Alfred's father Æthelwulf  
 25 was dead, and his mother must have been dead also, as Æthelwulf married Judith in 856, when Alfred was only seven years old. If then anything of the kind happened, it could not have been when Alfred was twelve years old, but before he was four. For in that year he went to Rome and could never have seen  
 30 his mother again, even if she were alive when he went. And for a child of four years old not to be able to read is not so very wonderful a thing, even in our own time.

I have told you how, when Alfred was four years old, he was sent to Rome by his father, and no doubt he came back with  
 35 Æthelwulf on his return. We have seen also that he took a leading part in the wars of his brothers against the Danes. In 868, when he was in his twentieth year, while Æthelred was King, Alfred married. His wife's name was Ealhswith; she was the daughter of Æthelred called the Mickle or Big, Alder-  
 40 man of the Gainas in Lincolnshire, and her mother Eadburh.

was of the royal house of the Mercians. It is said that on the very day of his marriage he was smitten with a strange disease, which for twenty years never quite left him, and fits of which might come on at any time. If this be true, it makes all the great things that he did even more wonderful. In 871, on 5 Æthelred's death, he came to the Crown. Æthelred left some young children, but nobody thought of their succeeding, so Alfred, the youngest son of Æthelwulf, became King of the West-Saxons and Over-lord of all England, as his father had appointed so long before with the consent of his Wise Men. 10

So Alfred was King, and he had at once to fight for his Kingdom. I have told you already of all the battles which were fought in the year 871, before Æthelred died, and Alfred had to fight yet another battle before the year was out. This was at Wilton near Salisbury, which then the chief town 15 of the Wilsetas. The modern city of Salisbury, or New Sarum as it is still called, was not founded till long after, in the thirteenth century, when the new cathedral was built; what is meant by Salisbury in these times is the old town, called Old Sarum, where the old cathedral and the old castle stood, but 20 which has long been quite forsaken. It is a wonderful place indeed, with some of the greatest fosses or ditches that are to be seen anywhere. But the name of Wilton seems to show that that town must have been the chief place of Wilshiro in those times. The battle of Wilton seems not to have been a very 25 decisive one, as we read that the Danes were put to flight and yet that they kept possession of the place of battle. On the whole it is hard to see which side had the better in the mere fighting of this year, but you must remember that the Danes, being in a strange country, had nothing to lose but their lives, 30 while the English not only suffered the loss of the men who were actually killed in the battles, but the mere marching about of the armies and the plundering and burning by the Danes must have been dreadful blows to them. But after the battle of Wilton the Danes seem to have been tired; we read that 35 they made peace with the West-Saxons; and there was peace, so far as Wessex was concerned, for a few years. But they were all the while fighting and plundering and settling in other parts of Britain, both in Northumberland and Mercia, and also among the Piets and the Strathelyde Welsh.

The Danes did not come again into Wessex till 876, but two very important things happened meanwhile in Mercia and Northumberland. In 874 Burhred, King of the Mercians, King Alfred's brother-in-law, ran away and left his Kingdom for fear of the Danes who had entered the country of Lindsey, that is the northern part of Lincolnshire, and had got as far as Repton in Nottinghamshire. At Repton the minster is quite gone, but the monastery there was very famous in early times; there is some very ancient work in the parish church, which may very likely be as old as Alfred's days. Burhred, instead of fighting, like his brother-in-law Alfred, went out of the land, and went to Rome, like Ceadwalla and Ine, and died almost as soon as he got there. The Danes then gave the crown of Mercia to one of Burhred's Thanes named Ceolwulf; but of course, like Egberht in Northumberland, he was a mere puppet in their hands; indeed he swore oaths to them, and had to do whatever they bade him. Thus the old Kingdom of Mercia came to an end. And this was one of the ways in which the coming of the Danes helped to make all England into one Kingdom. For of course, when the Danes were gone and there was some quiet again, it was easier, now that there was no King in Mercia, to join Mercia or part of it more completely on to Wessex, which I shall tell you about at the proper time. The other important thing is that, in the year 876, the year in which the Danes came again into Wessex, another party of them, under Healfdene, divided the lands of Northumberland among them, and began ploughing and tilling them. Thus you see, as I told you, the Danes were beginning to settle in the land, instead of merely coming to plunder and go away. By Northumberland we must here understand Deira or Yorkshire, for it would seem that they did not settle in Bernicia, where English Aldermen went on reigning at Bamborough. This must be the reason why that part of old Northumberland, though so far away from the Humber, still keeps the old name. And this must also be the reason why there are few or no Danish names in the present countries of Durham and Northumberland or in that part of Scotland which then belonged to Northumberland, while in Yorkshire Danish names are very common. When we find villages called Haxby and Thirkleby, we may be quite sure that they were once the estates of Danes called Hakon



horses "bestole away" to Exeter, and it would seem that the rest stayed at Wareham. For we read that the next year (877) the army went from Wareham to Exeter, and a great fleet set out to go "west about," perhaps to go round the Land's End, 5 or perhaps only to sail round the Isle of Purbeck to get to Exeter. For in those days, when ships were much smaller than they are now, they could get higher up the rivers, and then Exeter was a great port. But now large ships cannot get so high up the river Exe, and it is only smaller vessels which can reach 10 Exeter. So you may remember that Caerleon-on-Usk was a great port in old times, but now ships only get up as far as Newport. But there is this difference between the two *Isca*, that Exeter still remains a large city, while Caerleon has quite gone down in the world. However, wherever the fleet was 15 going, it did not get far. A great storm came on, and broke many of the ships, so that they got no further than Swanwich or Swanage, in the Isle of Purbeck, not far from Wareham. Perhaps it was this bad luck which made them make peace again. For King Alfred rode after the Danish horse as far as 20 Exeter, but he did not overtake them till they had got there, and were safe in the stronghold. Then they made peace, swearing oaths, and giving as many hostages as the King asked for. And this time the Chronicle says that they kept good peace. That is to say, they went for the rest of the year out 25 of Wessex into Mercia. They now dealt with Mercia much as they had before dealt with Northumberland. They divided part of the land among themselves, and gave part to Ceolwulf just as they had left part of Northumberland to the Lords of Bamborough. It must have been now that they finally settled 30 in Lincolnshire and the other parts of Mercia where we hear most of the Danes afterwards, and where Danish names are still common. In the parts of Mercia which are near to Wessex we do not find Danish names.

And now we come to the terrible year 878, the greatest and 35 saddest and most glorious in all Alfred's life. In the very beginning of the year, just after Twelfth-night, the Danish host again came suddenly—"bestole" as the Chronicle says—to Chippenham. Then "they rode through the West-Saxons' land, and there sat down, and mickle of the folk over sea they drove, 40 and of the others the most deal they rode over; all but the King

Alfred; he with a little band hardly sared [went] after the woods and on the moor-fastnesses." How can I tell you this better than in the words of the Chronicle itself, only altering some words into their modern shape, that you may the better understand them? One hardly sees how it was that the country 5 could be all at once so utterly overrun, especially as there is no mention made of any battle. There is indeed one account which says that Alfred did not reign so well at the beginning as he did afterwards, but that he did badly in many things and oppressed his people, so that they would not fight for him; but 10 that he was rebuked by his cousin the hermit Saint Neot, and that after that he ruled well. But I do not at all believe this, because there is no good authority for it, and it does not agree in the least with what went before and what goes after. It is more likely of the two, as some think, that the part of Alfred's 15 dominions where the people were still of Welsh descent gave him some trouble, and that they did not join heartily with his own West-Saxons. But I do not see any very clear proof even of this, and anyhow it is quite certain that this time of utter distress lasted only a very little while, for in a few months 20 Alfred was again at the head of an army and able to fight against the Danes. It must have been at this time that the story of the cakes, which I dare say you have heard, happened, if it ever happened at all. The tale is quite possible, but there is no proof of it being true. It is said that Alfred went and 25 stayed in the hut of a neatherd or swineherd of his, who knew who he was, though his wife did not know him. One day the woman set some cakes to bake, and bade the King, who was sitting by the fire mending his bow and arrows, to tend them. Alfred thought more of his bow and arrows than he did of the 30 cakes, and let them burn. Then the woman ran in and cried out,

"There, don't you see the cakes on fire? Then wherefore turn them not? You're glad enough to eat them when they are piping hot."

It is almost more strange when we are told by some that this swineherd or neatherd afterwards became Bishop of Winchester. They say that his name was Denewulf, and that the King saw that, though he was in so lowly a rank, he was naturally a 35 very wise man. So he had him taught, and at last gave him the Bishoprick. But it is hard to believe this, especially as Denewulf, Bishop of Winchester, became Bishop the very next year.

We will go on with things that are more certain. I do not think that I can do better than tell you the story as it is in the Chronicle, only changing those forms of words which you might not understand.

5 "And that ilk [same] winter was Iwer's and Healfdene's brother among the West-Saxons in Devonshire; and him there men slew and eight hundred men with him and forty men of his host. And there was the banner taken which they the Raven  
10 hight [call]. And after this Easter wrought King Alfred with his little band a work [fortress] at Athelney, and out of that work was he striving with the [Danish] host, and (with him) that deal [part] of the Sumorsætas that nighest was. And on the seventh week after Easter he rode to *Ecgbrihtesstan*, by the east of Selwood; and there to meet him came the Sumor-  
15 sætas all and the Wilsætas and of Hamptonshire the deal [part] that on this side the sea was; and they were fain [glad] to see him. And he fared [went] one night from the wick [dwelling or camp] to *Æglen*, and after that one night to *Ethandun*, and there fought with all the host and put them to flight, and rode  
20 after them to their work [fortress] and there sat fourteen nights. And the army sold [gave] him hostages and mickle oaths, and eke they promised him that their King should receive baptism. And this they fulfilled. And three weeks after came the King Guthrum with thirty of the men that in the host were worthiest,  
25 at Aller, that is near Athelney. And him the King received at his baptism, and his chrisom-loosing was at Wedmore. And he was twelve nights with the King, and he honoured him and his feres [companions] with mickle fee [money]."

Thus you see how soon King Alfred's good luck came back to  
30 him again. And I do not doubt that you are the more pleased to hear the tale, because all this happened not very far from our own home. It was in the woods and marshes of Somersetshire that Alfred took shelter, and the Sumorsætas were among the first who came to his help after Easter. But we will take things  
35 a little in order. You see the first fighting was in Devonshire, where the Raven was taken. This was a famous banner of the Danes, said to have been worked by the daughters of Ragnar Lodbrog. It was thought to have wonderful powers, so that they could tell by the way in which the raven held his wings  
40 whether they would win or not in battle. *Æthelweard* tells us

that the Danes besieged Odda the Alderman of Devonshire, and adds that, though their King was killed, still the Danes kept the battle-place. You see the time of utter distress lasted only from soon after Twelfth-night to Easter, and even during that time the taking of the Raven must have cheered the English a good deal. After Easter things begin to mend, when Alfred built his fort at Athelney and began to skirmish with the Danes, and seven weeks later came the great victory at Ethandun, which set Wessex free. You must remember that, at this time, all the low country of Somersetshire, Sedgmoor and the other moors, as we call them now, was covered with water, or was at least quite marshy, so that any ground a little higher than the rest was really an island. You know how to this day very few people live quite down on the moors, but the towns and villages, and even most of the separate houses, are all built either on such islands, or else on the slopes of the larger hills, as the villages between Wells and Axbridge cling, as it were, to the side of Mondip. Such islands were often chosen, as I think I told you before, for building monasteries, and they were often useful in time of war, when men could take shelter in such an island, where it was hard for their enemies to get at them. Thus you will find that, in later times, the Isle of Ely and other such places served as a shelter to the English who were fighting against the Normans, and so it was when King Alfred made his fort at Athelney. Then when he thought he was strong enough, he left the low ground and went up the hills, and gathered his men together at Egebriltasstan or Brixton, which is in Wiltshire, near Warminster. Then he marched, still north-east, to Ethandun, that is Edington, not far from Trowbridge and Westbury, where he fought the great battle. At Edington there is a very fine church, but that was not built till many hundred years after Alfred's time, namely in the reign of Edward the Third. Some say that the white horse which is cut in the side of the chalk hills near there was cut then, that men might remember the great battle of Ethandun. But it has been altered in modern times to make it look more like a real horse. There is another figure of a white horse near Shrivenham, which has not been altered at all, but is very old and rude, so that you might hardly know that it was meant for a horse at all. Whether either of them has really anything to do with King Alfred I do not

pretend to say. Perhaps the one near Shrivenham may be a great deal older than Alfred's time, as it is very like the figures of horses on some of the old British coins.

But all this time Alfred seems to have kept his head-quarters 5 at Athelney, for it was at Aller, which is close to Athelney, that Guthorm came to be baptized. Thence they went to Wedmore, because there the West-Saxon Kings had a house. There the Wise Men came together, and Alfred and Guthorm (or, to give him the name by which he was baptized, Æthelstan) 10 made a treaty. Guthorm-Æthelstan was to leave Wessex, but he was to keep East-Anglia, which he had already, and the north-eastern part of Mercia. The boundary ran along the Thames to the mouth of the Lea, then by Bedford and the river Ouse to the old Roman road called Watling 15 Street. The south-western part of Mercia was to remain to Alfred. That is to say, speaking roughly, Alfred recovered that part of Mercia which had been originally West Saxon and which had been conquered by the Angles in the seventh and eighth centuries. But you see that the Danes now got much 20 the larger part of England; still Alfred contrived to keep London. All Northumbreland and East-Anglia, most part of Essex, and the larger part of Mercia, thus fell to the Danes. The part of Mercia that Alfred kept he did not altogether join on to Wessex; he did not keep it immediately in his 25 own hands as he did Wessex; West-Saxon Mercia, as we may call it, was still governed by its own Alderman, who held his own Assembly of Wise Men. But then the Alderman of the Mercians was now named by the King of the West-Saxons. One Æthelred, who had been Alderman of the Hwiccas, was now 30 made Alderman of all the West-Saxon part of Mercia, and Alfred gave him his daughter Æthelflæd in marriage. She was called the Lady of the Mercians, and you will hear of her again.

We shall find that Guthorm-Æthelstan did not always keep the treaty of Wedmore quite so well as he should have done. 35 Still this treaty was very much better kept than any treaty with the Danes had ever been kept before. In 879 the army went away from Chippenham to Cirencester; that is, they went out of Wessex into Mercia, though not as yet into their own part of Mercia. At Cirencester they "sat" for a year, seemingly 40 by Alfred's leave, as we do not read of any fighting or of any

mischievous being done. Indeed some accounts say that only those of the Danes stayed who chose to become Christians, and that the rest went away into Gaul under a famous leader of theirs named Hasting. Anyhow, in 880 they went quite away into what was now their own land of East-Anglia, and divided it 5 among themselves. Thus Alfred had quite freed his own Kingdom from the Danes, though he was obliged to leave so much of the island in their hands. And even through all these misfortunes, the Kingdom of Wessex did in some sort become greater. For there was now no longer a King of the 10 Mercians, but a great part of Mercia was governed by an Alderman, who was not only the man of the King of the West-Saxons, as the latter Kings of the Mercians had been, but was appointed by him, and was in fact only a great magistrate acting under his orders. Remember that in 880, when Alfred had 15 done so many great things, he was still only thirty-one years old.

I have now finished what I may call the second Danish War, and there was now peace for several years. Perhaps then this is the best place to bring in one or two stories about Alfred which are worth remembering in one way, whether they 20 are true or false. For we can at least see how much people always remembered and thought of Alfred, by there being so many more stories told of him than of almost any other of the old Kings. The only King of whom anything like so many stories are told is Edgar, and the stories which are told of 25 Edgar are by no means so much to his credit as the stories which are told of Alfred.

One story is that Alfred, wishing to know what the Danes were about and how strong they were, set out one day from Athelney in the disguise of a minstrel or juggler, and went into 30 the Danish camp, and stayed there several days, amusing the Danes with his playing, till he had seen all that he wanted, and then went back without any one finding him out. Now there is nothing actually impossible in this story, but we do not find it in any writer earlier than William of Malmesbury, who lived in the 35 twelfth century. And it is the sort of story which one finds turning up in different forms in different ages and countries. For instance, exactly the same story is told of a Danish King Anlaf, of whom you will hear presently. So it is one of those things which you cannot at all believe for certain.

# FREEMAN'S NORMAN CONQUEST.

---

## THE BATTLE OF SENLAC.

THE morning of the decisive day at last had come. The Duke of the Normans heard mass, and received the communion in both kinds, and drew forth his troops for their march against the English post. As usual, an exhortation from the general went  
5 before any military action. The topics for a speech made by William to his army were obvious. He came to maintain his just right to the English Crown; he came to punish the perjury of Harold and the older crime of Godwine against his kinsman Ælfred. The safety of his soldiers and the honour of their  
10 country were in their own hands; defeated, they had no hope and no retreat; conquerors, the glory of victory and the spoils of England lay before them. But of victory there could be no doubt; God would fight for those who fought for the righteous cause, and what people could ever withstand the Normans in  
15 war? They were the descendants of the men who had won Neustria from the Frank, and who had reduced Frankish Kings to submit to the most humiliating of treaties. He, their Duke, and they his subjects, had themselves conquered at Mortemer and at Varaville. Were they to yield to the felon English, never  
20 renowned in war, whose country had been over and over again harried and subdued by the invading Dane? Let them lift up their banners and march on; let them spare no man in the hostile rank; they were marching on to certain victory, and the fame of their exploits would resound from one end of heaven to  
25 the other.

The faithful William Fitz-Osbern now rode up to the mound on which his sovereign stood, and warned him that there was no time to tarry. Kindled by the exhortations of their leader, the host marched on. They made their way, perhaps in no very  
30 certain order, till, from the hill of Telham or Heathland, they first came in sight of the English encamped on the opposite height of Senlac. The knights, who had ridden from Hastings in a lighter garb, and probably on lighter horses, now put on their full armour, and mounted their war-steeds. The Duke now

called for his harness. His coat of mail was brought forth ; but in putting it on, by some accident, the fore part was turned hindmost. Many a man would have been embarrassed at the evil omen, and in truth the hearts of many of William's followers sank. But his own ready wit never failed him ; he was as able 5 to turn the accident to his advantage as when he first took seizin of the soil of Snssex. The omen, he said, was in truth a good one ; as the hauberk had been turned about, so he who bore it would be turned from a Duke into a King. Now fully armed, he called for his war-horse. His noble Spanish steed, the gift 10 of his ally King Alfonso, was brought forth. The horse was led by the aged Walter Giffard, the Lord of Longneville, the hero of Arques and of Mortemer. He had made the pilgrimage to the shrine of Saint James of Compostella, and he had brought the gallant beast as a worthy offering for a prince who was the 15 mirror of knighthood. William now sprang on his horse's back, and, now ready for battle, he paused for a moment at the head of his host. His gallant equipment and bearing called forth the admiration of all around him, and a spokesman for their thoughts was found in Hamon, the Viscount of the distant Thouars. He 20 spoke no doubt the words of all, when he said that never had such a knight been seen under heaven, and that the noble Count would become a nobler King.

And now the Duke, fully armed, looked forth upon the English encampment. At that moment Vital, a follower of his 25 brother the Bishop, one whose name is written in Domesday, rode up to his sovereign. He had been one of those who were sent forth to spy out the English host ; and William now asked him what he had seen and where the English usurper was to be found. Vital told him that Harold stood among the thick ranks 30 which crowned the summit of the hill, for there, so he deemed, he had seen the royal Standard. Then the Duke vowed his vow, that if God would give him victory over his perjured foe, he would, on the spot where that Standard stood ; raise a mighty minster to his honour. Among those who heard him was a monk, 35 William by name, who had come from the house of Marmoutiers, nestled far away beneath its cliffs by the banks of the rushing Loire. Men called him *Faber*, the wright or smith, because in other days, before he had put the cowl upon him, he had shown his skill in forging arrows for the service of the craft of the 40



woods. He now stepped forward, and craved that the holy house which the Duke would ere long raise on yonder height should be raised in honour of the renowned Saint Martin, the great Apostle of the Gauls. The prince of the Cenomannians owed spiritual  
 5 allegiance to the metropolitan throne of Tours; he said that it should be as his monastic namesake craved, and in after-days the height of Senlao was crowned with the Abbey of Saint Martin of the Place of Battle.

\* \* \* \* \*

The archers were all but universally on foot; the Parthian  
 10 horse-bowman was not absolutely unknown to Norman tactics, but such an union of characters did not extend to any considerable portion of the army. For the most part the archers were without defensive harness; they were clad in mere jerkins, with caps on their heads, but a few wore the defences common to the  
 15 horse and foot of both armies. These were the close-fitting coat of mail reaching to the knees and elbows, and the conical helmet without crest or other ornament, and with no protection for the face except the nose-piece. The horses had, unlike the practice of after-times, no artificial defence of any kind. Their riders,  
 20 in helmets and coats of mail, bore the kite-shaped shield, and were armed with long lances, not laid in the rest as in the equipment of the later chivalry, but lifted high in air over the bearer's shoulder. For close combat they had the heavy straight sword; the battle-axe is not shown on the Norman side, and two  
 25 men only in the host are represented as wielding the terrible mace. Those two men formed the innermost centre of the advancing host. There, in the midst of all, the guiding star of the whole army, floated the consecrated banner, the gift of Rome and of Hildebrand, the ensign by whose presence wrong was to  
 30 be hallowed into right. And close beneath its folds rode the two master-spirits of the whole enterprise, kindred alike in blood, in valour, and in crime. There rode the chief of all, the immediate leader of that choicest and central division, the mighty Duke himself. And we may be sure that it was not only  
 35 by the voice of flattery, but in the words of truth and soberness, that there, amid the choicest chivalry of Europe, the Bastard of Falaise was hailed as bearing the stoniest heart and the strongest arm among them all. Mounted on his stately horse, the gift of the Spanish King, he rode beneath the banner of the

Apostle, the leader and the moving spirit of the whole host. No man could bend his bow, but on that day he bore a weapon fitted only for the closest and most deadly conflict ;

*οὐκ' ἄρ' οὐ τόξοις μαχέσκειτο δουρί τε μακρῷ,  
ἀλλὰ σιδηρεῖη κορύνη ῥήγνυσκε φάλαγγας.*

The most authentic record of that day's fight arms him neither with sword nor spear, but sets before us the iron mace of the 5 Bastard as the one weapon fit to meet, man to man, and prince to prince, with the two-handed axe of Harold. Round his neck, we are told, were hung, as a hallowed talisman, the choicest of the relics on which the King of the English was said to have sworn his fatal oath. Close at his side, and armed with the 10 same fearful weapon, rode one whose name was soon to be joined with his own in the mouths of Englishmen, and who was to win a far deeper share of English hatred than the mighty Conqueror himself. Odo, the warrior-Prelate of Bayeux, rode in full armour by the side of his brother and sovereign, as eager and ready as 15 William himself to plunge wherever in the fight danger should press most nearly. To shed blood by sword or spear was a sin against the Church's canons, but to crush head-piece and head with the war-club was, in Odo's eyes, no breach of the duties of a minister of peace. The two mighty brethren, Duke and Bishop, 20 formed the central figures of the group. And hard by them rode a third brother of less renown, a third son of the Tanner's daughter, Robert of Mortain, the lord of the castle by the waterfalls, he who was soon to have a larger share than any other man of the spoils of England, and to add to his Earldom 25 by the Breton march the more famous Earldom of the kindred land of Cornwall. Fast by the three brethren the consecrated banner was borne by Toustain the White, the son of Rou, a knight of the less famous Bee in the land of Caux. Two men of higher rank and of greater age had already declined that 30 honourable office. Ralph of Conches or of Toesny, the heir of the proud line of Malahule, the man who had perhaps borne to King Henry the news of the night of Mortemer, held, among his other dignities, the hereditary right to bear the banner of his lord in the day of battle. But on that day that honour was 35 something from which men shrank as keeping them back from the

more active duties of the fight. Ralph of Toesny would not encumber his hands with anything, not even with the banner of the Apostle, if it were to stay his sword from smiting the foe without mercy. So too spake the famous Walter Giffard of 5 Longueville. Even in the days of Arques and Mortemer he was an aged man, and now he was old indeed; his hair was white, his arm was failing. He would deal blows on that day with such strength as his years had left him, but the long labour of carrying the standard could be borne only by a younger man. Thick 10 around Tostain and the chiefs beside whom he rode, were gathered the chivalry of Normandy, the future nobility of England, the men who made their way into our land by wrong and robbery, but whose children our land won to her own heart, and changed the descendants of the foemen of Pevensey and 15 Scalae into the men who won the Great Charter and dictated the Provisions of Oxford. Time would fail to tell of all; but a few names must not be passed by. There was William Patry of La Lande, who in old time had received Earl Harold as a guest, and who now rode by William's side, swearing that he would meet his 20 lord's rival face to face, and would deal to him the reward of his perjury. And there too rode men of nobler and of more lasting name. There rode Roger the Bigod, son of the poor serving-knight of William of Mortain, whose presence in the hostile ranks we can well forgive, as we hail in him the forefather of that 25 great house whose noblest son defied the greatest of England's later Kings in the cause of the liberties of England. And one there was in that host, well nigh the only Norman on whom Englishmen can look with personal sympathy and honour, William Malet, a man perchance born of an English mother, one connected 30 at all events by some tie of spiritual or temporal kindred with England and with Harold, and one who on that day knew how to reconcile his duty as a Norman subject with respect and honour towards the prince and towards the land to which that duty made him a foe. The names and the rewards of these men and of 35 countless others are written in the great record of Domesday. The heroes who fought against them for hearth and home are nameless.

The invading army was thus arranged in a threefold division according to the place of origin of each contingent. Each 40 division again was ranged in a threefold order according to the

nature of the troops which each contingent contained. First in each division marched the archers, slingers, and crossbow men, then the more heavily armed infantry, lastly the horsemen. The reason of this arrangement is obvious. The light-armed were to do what they could with their missiles to annoy the English, and, 5 if possible, to disorder their close array. On them followed the heavy infantry; they were to strive to break down the palisades of the English camp, and so to prepare the way for the charge of the horse. For William's knights to charge up the slope of Senlac was in any case a hard task, but to charge up the slope, 10 right in the teeth of Harold's axes, with the shield-wall and the triple palisade still unbroken, would have been absolute madness. Because therefore William exposed his infantry to the first and most terrible danger, we are not justified in charging him with that brutal carelessness as to soldiers beneath the degree of 15 knighthood or gentry, which was so often displayed by French commanders of later times. The two great captains who were that day matched together both knew their trade. The foresight of Harold had rendered William's choicest troops absolutely useless, until after a struggle which could not fail to be attended 20 with a frightful slaughter of his warriors of lower degree.

The English host now looked down from the height of Senlac upon the advancing enemy. Like the Normans, they had risen early; they were now fully armed, and they stood ready and eager for battle. The King rode round his lines, and addressed 25 to his men the speech expected from a general before action. The topics of Harold's exhortation were as obvious as those of William's. The English had simply to stand firm, and they were invincible; if they broke their ranks, they were lost. They fought for their country, their warfare was purely defensive, while 30 Duke William had come from a foreign land to seek to conquer them. It was therefore for William to attack, for Harold simply to defend; he had therefore chosen a post where the whole work to be done was to defend it. The Normans were good and valiant horsemen; let them once pierce the English barrier, and it would 35 be hard to drive them out again. But if the English kept their ranks, the Normans never could pierce the barrier. Their long lances would be of little avail in a combat on such ground as he had chosen for the fight. The English javelins would disorder their ranks as they advanced, and the axes would cleave them to 40

the earth if they ventured on a hand to hand fight at the barricades. And now, as Vital had brought his news to William, so also an English spy brought to Harold the latest tidings of the array and the approach of the enemy. The King was still  
5 on his horse, his javelin in his hand, when the news was brought to him beneath the shadow of a tree—perhaps the hoar apple-tree which marked the place of battle. When he had heard the tidings of his messenger, when he had surveyed and exhorted his whole army, the King rode to the royal post; he there dis-  
10 mounted, he took his place on foot, and prayed to God for help.

Thus far we have a natural and credible picture of the preparations of Harold and his host for the work of that awful day. But such a day was not likely to pass without its full accompaniment of legend and romance. Norman writers, strangely in  
15 the confidence of the English King, now tell us of dialogues between Harold and Gyrth; how, when the first division appeared on the crest of the hill, the King's heart was lifted up as he looked at his own vast numbers, and how he despised the seemingly small band that came against him. But Gyrth, ever  
20 wise, bids him think of the valour and good array, the horses and the harness of the enemy, and to remember how large a part of his own army are but unarmed churls. Presently, as division after division appears on Telham and passes down into the lower ground, the King's heart begins to quake. The Earl, an easy  
25 prophet after the fact, reproaches him with not having followed his counsel, with having refused to remain in London, and with having rashly staked everything on a single battle. Harold answers that it is Saturday, his lucky day, the day on which he was born, and the day which he had therefore chosen for his  
30 challenge. The calm intellect of Gyrth, like that of William, mocks at luck, and he reminds his brother that, if Saturday was the day of his birth, Saturday may also prove to be the day of his death. At last the whole ground between the heights is filled with the invading host; the banner of Saint Peter is seen  
35 floating over the central division. Then the King's heart utterly fails him; he can hardly speak for fear and surprise; he can only mutter charges against Baldwin of Flanders for deceiving him by false statements, of which no mention is found elsewhere, as to the force which William would be likely to muster.  
40 The credibility of a story of this kind is of the very lowest.

Harold and Gyrrh both died in the battle; they would at any rate keep their fears to themselves, and it is hard to see how their private talk could have come to the knowledge of the Norman poet. Besides this, Harold must, by this time at least, have known perfectly well the nature and number of the force 5 that was coming against him. The very account in which we find all these stories tells us how well both sides had been served by spies and messengers. Each prince must have been thoroughly aware with what sort of an enemy he had to deal. There was enough indeed to make the stoniest heart in either army anxious; 10 but of any feeling unworthy of a King or a soldier Harold and William were alike incapable. The proud horsemen and archers of Normandy might indeed, like the Medes of old, wonder at the tactics which opposed them without the help of bow or steed; but they could hardly, like their forerunners, impute madness to 15 the immovable wedge of men which, as if fixed to the ground by nature, covered every inch of the opposite hill. The whole height was alive with warriors; the slopes, strong in themselves, were still further strengthened by the firm barricades of ash and other timber, wattled in so close together that not a crevice 20 could be seen. Up the slopes, through the barricades, the enemy had to make their way in the teeth of ranks of men, ranged so closely together in the thick array of the shield-wall, that while they simply kept their ground, the success of an assailant was hopeless. Every man, from the King downwards, was on foot. 25 Those who rode to the field put their horses aside when the moment for actual fighting came. An English King was bound to expose his subjects to no danger from which he himself shrank, and, where the King fought, no man might dream of flight. This ancient national custom, adopted in earlier fights from 30 choice and habit, was, in the post which Harold had chosen, a matter of absolute necessity. The work of that day was to defend a fortress, to stand firm, and to strike down at once any man who strove to make his way within its wooden walls. To the south-west of the hill, beyond the isthmus, seem to have been 35 placed the less trustworthy portions of the army, the sudden levies of the southern shires. These, like the Norman archers, had, for the most part, no defensive armour. Their weapons were of various kinds; the bow was the rarest of all; a few only were armed with swords or axes. Most of them had javelins or 40

clubs, some had only such rustio weapons as forks and sharp stakes. Others seem to have retained some of the rudest arms of primitive days, and to have gone to battle with the stone hatchets or stone hammers which we commonly look on as belonging only to earlier and lower races than our own. But even such rude weapons as these would be of use in thrusting back the less efficient portion of the invaders, as they strove to climb the height or to break down the barricade. But it was not in troops or arms like these that Harold placed his main trust.

10 The flower of the English army consisted of the King's personal following, his picked men, who had been his comrades in all wars, together with the chosen warriors of Kent, Essex, and London. These wore helmets and coats of mail hardly differing from those of the enemy. Their shields too were mostly of the same kite-

15 shaped form, but a few of them vary from this type; some especially are round, with a boldly projecting boss, more like the shields of classical warfare. They carried, like the Romans, javelins to hurl at the beginning of the action, and heavier weapons for close combat. Some still retained the ancient broad-

20 sword, the weapon of Brunanburh, of Maldon, and of Assandun, but most of them bore a weapon more terrible still, the long-handled axe wielded with both hands. The introduction of this arm was an innovation of the last fifty years. Its introduction was doubtless due to Chut, but the axo was probably brought

25 into more general use, and made more distinctly the national weapon, by Harold himself. The Norman writers seem almost to shudder at the remembrance of this fearful weapon, which, wielded by the arm of Harold, struck down horse and man at a single blow. It was in truth the perfection of a weapon of mere

30 strength; no blow could be so crushing if the blow reached its aim; but swung in the air, as it was, with both hands, it left its wielder singularly exposed to missile weapons while in the act of striking the blow. On the very crown of the hill, on the point where the ground begins to slope to the south-east, the point

35 directly in the teeth of the advancing army, on the spot marked to after-ages by the high altar of the abbey church of Battle, were planted the twofold ensigns of England. There, high above the host, flashed the Dragon of Wessex, the sign which had led Englishmen to victory at Ethandun and at Brunanburh,

40 at Penselwood and at Brontford, and which had suuk without

dishonour in the last fight beneath the heights of Assandun. And now it came all glorious from the overthrow of the mightiest warrior of the North, to try the fortune of England against the subtler arts of Gaul and Rome. There too was pitched the Standard, the personal ensign of the King, a glorious gonfanon, 5 blazing with gems, and displaying, wrought in the purest gold, the old device of Eteoklos, the armed warrior advancing to the battle. Around this special post of honour and of danger were ranged the choicest warriors of England, the personal following of Harold and his house, their Thegns and their Houscarls, the 10 men who had stormed the mountain-holds of Gruffydd and whose axes had cloven the shield-wall of Hardrada. And there, between the Dragon and the Standard, stood the rising hopes of England's newly-chosen dynasty. There, as the inner circle of the host, were ranged the fated warriors of the house of God-15 wine. Three generations of that great line were gathered beneath the Standard of its chief. There stood the aged Ælfric, with his monk's cowl beneath his helmet. There stood young Hakon the son of Swegen, atoning for his father's crimes. And, closer still than all, the innermost centre of that glorious ring, 20 stood the kingly three, brothers in life and death. There, in their stainless truth, stood Gyrth the counsellor and Leofwin the follow-exile. And there, with his feet firm on his native earth, sharing the toils and dangers of his meanest soldier, with the kingly helm upon his brow and the two-handed axe upon his 25 shoulder, stood Harold, King of the English.

The French army was now crossing the lower, but not level, ground which lies between Telham and Senlac. It is not strictly a plain, but rather a rolling country, with the ground rising and falling. Swampy as it still is in many places, to cross it, and 30 that in the full harness of battle, must have added somewhat to the toils and difficulties of a march which had already led them from Hastings to Telham. Still all three divisions pressed vigorously on to the foot of the heights. Alan and his Bretons on the left, the division of William's army which was most likely 35 the least esteemed, had to make their attack on the least trustworthy portion of the English army. They had to make their way up the ground lying to the west of the present buildings of the abbey. There the ascent is easiest in itself, but it is defended by the small detached hill already spoken of, which was doubtless 40



occupied as an English outpost. On the other hand, at the extreme right, Roger of Montgomery with his Frenchmen had to attack at the eastern corner of the hill where the present road from Hastings enters the town of Battle. William himself and his native Normans took on them the heaviest task of all. They were the centre, and their duty was to cut their way up the hill right to the Standard, in the teeth of King Harold himself and the picked men of the English host.

And now the fight began. It was one of the sacred hours of the Church, it was at the hour of prime, three hours before noon-day, that the first blows were exchanged between the invaders and the defenders of England. The Normans had crossed the English force, and were now at the foot of the hill, with the palisades and the axes right before them. The trumpet sounded, and a flight of arrows from the archers in all the three divisions of William's army was the prelude to the onslaught of the heavy-armed foot. But, before the two armies met hand to hand, a juggler or minstrel known as *Taillifer*, the Cleaver of Iron, rode forth from the Norman ranks as if to defy the whole force of England in his single person. He craved and obtained the Duke's leave to strike the first blow; he rode forth, singing songs of Roland and of Charlemagne—so soon had the name and exploits of the great German become the spoil of the enemy. He threw his sword into the air and caught it again; but he presently showed that he could use warlike weapons for other purposes than for jugglers' tricks of this kind; he pierced one Englishman with his lance, he struck down another with his sword, and then himself fell beneath the blows of their comrades. A bravado of this kind might serve as an omen, it might stir up the spirits of men on either side; but it could in no other way affect the fate of the battle. William was too wary a general to trust much to such knight-errantry as this. After the first discharge of arrows, the heavier foot followed to the attack, and the real struggle now began. The French infantry had to toil up the hill, and to break down the palisade, while a shower of stones and javelins disordered their approach, and while club, sword, and axe greeted all who came within the reach of hand-strokes. The native Normans had to do this in the face of the fiercest resistance, in the teeth of the heaviest axes, wielded by the hands of men with whom to fight had ever been to vanquish, the kinsmen and

Thengs and Housecarls of King Harold. Their own missiles, hurled from below, could do comparatively little damage. Both sides fought with unyielding valour; the war-cries rose loud on either side, the Normans shouted "God help us;" the English, from behind their barricades, mocked with cries of "Out, out" 5 every foe who entered or strove to enter. But our fathers also mingled piety with valour; they too called on holy names to help them in that day's struggle. They raised their national war-cry of "God Almighty," and in remembrance of the relic which their King so well loved to honour, they called on the 10 "Holy Cross," the Holy Cross of Waltham, little knowing perhaps of the awful warning which that venerated reed had given to their King and to his people. The Norman infantry had now done its best, but that best had been in vain. The choicest chivalry of Europe now pressed on to the attack. The knights 15 of Normandy, and of all the lands from which men had flocked to William's standard, now pressed on, striving to make what impression they could with the whole strength of themselves and their horses on the impenetrable fortress of timber, shields, and living warriors. But the advantage of ground enjoyed by the 20 English, their greater physical strength and stature, the terrible weapons which they wielded, all joined to baffle every effort of Breton, Picard, Norman, and of the mighty Duke himself. Javelin and arrow had been tried in vain; every Norman missile had found an English missile to answer it. The lifted lances had 25 been found wanting; the broad sword had clashed in vain against the two-handed axe; the maces of the Duke and of the Bishop had done their best. But few who came within the unerring sweep of an English axe ever lived to strike another blow. Rank after rank of the best chivalry of France and Normandy pressed on to 30 the unavailing task. All was in vain; the old Teutonic tactics, carried on that day to perfection by the master-skill of Harold, proved too strong for the arts and the valour of Gaul and Roman. Not a man had swerved; not an inch of ground was lost; the shield-wall was still unbroken, and the Dragon of Wessex still 35 seared unconquered over the hill of Senlao.

The English had thus far stood their ground well and wisely. The tactics of Harold had thus far completely answered. Not only had every attack failed, but the great mass of the French army altogether lost heart. The Bretons and the other auxiliaries 40

on the left were the first to give way. Horse and foot alike, they turned and fled. A body of English troops was now rash enough, in direct defiance of the King's orders, to leave its post and pursue. These were of course some of the defenders of the English right. They may have been, as is perhaps suggested by a later turn of the battle, the detachment which guarded the small outlying hill. Or they may have been the men posted at the point just behind the outlying hill, where the slope is easiest, and where the main Breton attack would most likely be made. They had succeeded in beating back their assailants, and the temptation to chase the flying enemy must have been almost irresistible. And it may even be that old differences of race added keenness to the encounter, and that Englishmen felt a special delight in cutting down *Bret-wealas* even from beyond sea. At any rate, the whole of William's left wing was thrown into utter confusion. The central division could hardly have seen the cause of that confusion; the press of the fugitives disordered their ranks, and soon the whole of the assailing host was falling back; even the Normans themselves, as their historian is driven unwillingly to confess, were at last carried away by the contagion. For the moment the day seemed lost; men might well deem that the Bastard had no hope of being changed into the Conqueror, the Duke of the Normans into the King of the English. But the strong heart of William failed him not, and by his single prowess and presence of mind he recalled his flying troops. Like Brihtnoth at Maldon, like Eadmund at Sherston, he was himself deemed to have fallen or to have fled. He tore his helmet from his head, and with his look and his voice he called back his men to the attack. "Madmen," he cried, "behold me. Why flee ye? Death is behind you, victory is before you. I live, and by God's grace I will conquer." With a spear, snatched, it may be, from some comrade, he met or pursued the fugitives, driving them back by main force to the work. Yet one version tells us that at this very moment a counsellor of flight was at his side. One Norman poet has sung how Eustace of Boulogne bade William turn his rein, and not rush on upon certain death. If such counsels were ever given, they were cast aside with scorn; the bold words and gestures of the Duke restored the spirits of his men, and his knights once more pressed on, sword in hand, round him. His brother the

Bishop meanwhile rode, mace in hand, to another quarter, and called back to their duty another party of fugitives. Encouraged by this turn in the fight, the Breton infantry themselves, chased as they were across the field by the over-daring English, now turned and cut their pursuers in pieces. Order was soon again established throughout the whole line of the assailants, and William and Odo, with all their host, pressed on to a second and more terrible attack.

A new act in the awful drama of that day has now begun. The Duke himself, at the head of his own Normans, again pressed towards the Standard. Now came what was perhaps the fiercest exchange of handstrokes in the whole battle. As in the old Roman legend, the main stress of the fight fell on three valiant brethren on either side. William, Odo, and Robert pressed on to the attack, while Harold, Gyrth, and Leofwine stood ready to defend. The Duke himself, his robes round his neck, spurred on right in the teeth of the English King. A few moments more, and the mighty rivals might have met face to face, and the war-club of the Bastard might have clashed against the lifted axo of the Emperor of Britain. That Harold shrank from such an encounter we may not deem for a moment. But a heart, if it might be, even loftier than his own beat high to save him from such a risk. In the same heroic spirit in which he had already offered to lead the host on what seemed a desperate enterprise, the Earl of the East-Angles pressed forward to give, if need be, his own life for his King and brother. Before William could come to handstrokes with Harold, perhaps before he could even reach the barricade, a spear, hurled by the hand of Gyrth, checked his progress. The weapon so far missed its aim that the Duke was himself unhurt. But his noble Spanish horse, the first of three that died under him that day, fell to the ground. But Duke William could fight on foot as well as on horseback. Indeed on foot he had a certain advantage. He could press closer to the barricade, and could deal a nearer and surer blow. And a near and sure blow he did deal. William rose to his feet; he pressed straight to seek the man who had so nearly slain him. Duke and Earl met face to face, and the English hero fell crushed beneath the stroke of the Duke's mace. The day might seem to be turning against England, when a son of Godwine had fallen; nor did the blow come singly. Gyrth had fallen by a fate worthy of

such a spirit, a fate than which none could be more glorious ; he had died in the noblest of causes and by the hand of the mightiest of enemies. Nor did he fall alone ; close at his side, and almost at the same moment, Leofwino, fighting sword in hand, was smitten to the earth by an unnamed assailant, perhaps by the mace of the Prelate of Bayeux or by the lance of the Count of Mortain. A dark cloud indeed seemed to have gathered over the destinies of the great West-Saxon house. Of the valiant band of sons who had surrounded Godwino on the great day of his return, Harold now stood alone. By a fate of special bitterness, he had seen with his own eyes the fall of those nearest and dearest to him. The deed of Metaurus had been, as it were, wrought beneath the eyes of Hannibal ; Achilles had looked on and seen the doom of his Patroklos and his Antilochos. The fate of England now rested on the single heart and the single arm of her King.

But the fortune of the day was still far from being determined. The two Earls had fallen, but the fight at the barricades went on as fiercely as before. The men of the Earldoms of the two fallen chiefs relaxed not because of the loss of their captains. The warriors of Kent and Essex fought manfully to avenge their leader. As for the Duke, we left him on foot, an enemy as dangerous on foot as when mounted on his destrier. But Norman and horse could not long be severed. William called to a knight of Maine to give up his charger to his sovereign. Was it cowardice, was it disloyalty to the usurper of the rights of the old Cenomannian house, which made the knight of Maine refuse to dismount at William's bidding ? But a blow from the Duke's hand brought the disobedient rider to the ground, and William, again mounted, was soon again dealing wounds and death among the defenders of England. But the deed and the fate of Gyrth were soon repeated. The spear of another Englishman brought William's second horse to the ground, and he too, like the East-Anglian Earl, paid the penalty of his exploit by death at the Duke's own hand. Count Eustace had by this time better learned how to win the favour of his great ally. His horse was freely offered to the Duke ; a knight of his own following did him the same good service, and Duke and Count pressed vigorously on against the English lines. The struggle was hard ; but the advantage still remained with the English. The second attack

had indeed to some extent prevailed. Not only had the English suffered a personal loss than which one loss only could have been greater, but the barriade was now in some places broken down. The French on the right had been specially active and successful in this work. And specially distinguished among them was a party under the command of a youthful Norman warrior, Robert the son of the old Roger of Beaumont. They had perhaps met with a less vigorous resistance, while the main hopes and fears of every Englishman must have gathered round the great personal struggle which was going on beneath the Standard. Still those who were most successful had as yet triumphed only over timber, and not over men. The shield-wall still stood behind the palisade, and every Frenchman who had pressed within the English enclosure had paid for his daring with his life. The English lines were as unyielding as ever; and though the second attack had been less completely unsuccessful than the first, it was still plain that to scale the hill by any direct attack of the Norman horsemen was a hopeless undertaking.

But the generalship of William, his ready eye, his quick thought, his dauntless courage, never failed him. In the Norman character the fox and the lion were mingled in nearly equal proportions; strength and daring had failed, but the object might perhaps still be gained by stratagem. William had marked with pleasure that the late flight of his troops had beguiled a portion of the English to forsake their firm array and their strong position. He had marked with equal pleasure that some impression had at last been made on the English defences. If by any means any large portion of the English army could be drawn down from the heights, an entrance might be made at the points where the barriade was already weakened. He therefore ventured on a daring stratagem. If his army, or a portion of it, pretended flight, the English would be tempted to pursue; the pretended fugitives would turn upon their pursuers, and meanwhile another division might reach the summit through the gap thus left open. He gave his orders accordingly, and they were faithfully and skilfully obeyed. A portion of the army, seemingly the left wing which had so lately fled in earnest, now again turned in apparent flight. Undismayed by the fate of their comrades who had before broken their lines, the English on the right wing, mainly, as we have seen, the irregular levies, rushed

down and pursued them with shouts of delight. But the men of Brittany, Poitou, and Maine had now better learned their lesson. They turned on the pursuing English; the parts of the combatants were at once reversed, and the pursuers now themselves fled in earnest. Yet, undisciplined and foolhardy as their conduct had been, they must have had some wary leaders among them, for they found the means to take a special revenge for the fraud which had been played off upon them. The importance of the small outlying hill now came into full play. Either its  
 10 defenders had never left it, or a party of the fugitives contrived to rally and occupy it. At all events it was occupied and gallantly defended by a body of light-armed English. With a shower of darts and stones they overwhelmed a body of French who attacked them; not a man of the party was lost. Another party  
 15 of English, evidently consisting of the levies of the neighbourhood, had the skill to use their knowledge of the country to the best advantage. They made their way to the difficult ground to the west of the hill, to the steep and thickly-wooded banks of the small ravine. Here the light-armed English turned and  
 20 made a stand; the French horsemen, recklessly pursuing, came tumbling head over heels into the chasm, where they were slaughtered in such numbers that the ground is said to have been made level by their corpses.

The men who had committed the great error of pursuing the  
 25 apparent fugitives had thus, as far as they themselves were concerned, retrieved their error skilfully and manfully. But the error was none the less fatal to England. The Duke's great object was now gained; the main end of Harold's skilful tactics had been frustrated by the inconsiderate ardour of the least  
 30 valuable portion of his troops. Through the rash descent of the light-armed on the right, the whole English army lost its vantage-ground. The pursuing English had left the most easily-accessible portion of the hill open to the approach of the enemy. While French and English were scattered over the lower ground,  
 35 fighting in no certain order and with varied success, the main body of the Normans made their way on to the hill, no doubt by the gentle slope at the point west of the present buildings. The great advantage of the ground was now lost; the Normans were at last on the hill. Instead of having to cut their way  
 40 up the slope and through the palisades, they could now charge

to the east, directly against the defenders of the Standard. Still the battle was far from being over. The site had still some advantages for the English. The hill, narrow and in some places with steep sides, was by no means suited for the evolutions of cavalry, and, though the English palisade was gone, the English shield-wall was still a formidable hindrance in the way of the assailants. In short the position which the keen eye of Harold had chosen stood him in good stead to the last. Our Norman informants still speak with admiration of the firm stand made by the English. It was still the hardest of tasks to surround their bristling lines. It was a strange warfare, where the one side dealt in assaults and movements, while the other, as if fixed in the ground, withstood them. The array of the English was so close that they moved only when they were dead, they stirred not at all while they were alive. The slightly wounded could not escape, but were crushed to death by the thick ranks of their comrades. That is to say, the array of the shield-wall was still kept, though now without the help of the barricades or the full advantage of the ground. The day had now turned decidedly in favour of the invaders; but the fight was still far from being over. It was by no means clear that some new chance of warfare might not again turn the balance in favour of England.

It is hard to tell the exact point of time at which the Normans gained this great advantage. But it was probably about three in the afternoon, the hour of vespers. If so, the fight had already been raging for six hours, and as yet its result was far from certain. But the last stage of the battle was now drawing near. The English, though no longer entrenched, had still the fortress of shields to trust to, but gradually the line became less firmly kept, and the battle seems almost to have changed into a series of single combats. It is probably at this stage that we should place most of the many personal exploits recorded of various warriors on both sides. The names of the Normans are preserved, while the English, though full justice is done to their valour, remain nameless. Of Harold himself, strange to say, we hear nothing personally, beyond the highest general eulogies of his courage and conduct. His axe was the weightiest; his blows were the most terrible of all. The horse and his rider gave way before him, cloven to the ground by a single stroke. He played the part alike of a general and of a private soldier.



This is a praise which must have been common to every commander of those times ; still it is given in a marked way both to William and to Harold. But the two rivals never actually met. William, we are told, sought earnestly to meet his enemy  
5 face to face, but he never succeeded. He found however adversaries hardly less terrible. Like Gyrth earlier in the fight, another Englishman, whose axo had been dealing death around him, now met the Duke in single combat. William spurred on his horse, and aimed a blow at him with his mace ; the Eng-  
10 lishman swerved, he avoided the stroke, and lifted his own axo against William. The Duke bent himself ; the axo fell, it beat in his helmet and nearly struck him from his horse. But William kept his seat ; he aimed another blow at the Englishman, who now took shelter among his comrades. A party of the  
15 Normans pressed on, singled him out, and pierced him through and through with their lances. Another Englishman smote at the Duke with his spear, but William was beforehand with him ; before the blow could be dealt, a stroke of the war-club had smitten him to the ground. Personal encounters of this sort were going  
20 on all over the hill. One gigantic Englishman, captain, we are told, of a hundred men, did special execution among the enemy. Beneath his blows, as beneath those of the King, horse and rider fell to the ground ; the Normans stood aghast before him, till a thrust from the lance of Roger of Montgomery left him stretched  
25 on the earth. Two other Englishmen, sworn brothers in arms, fought side by side, and many horses and men had fallen beneath their axes. A French knight met them face to face ; for a moment his heart failed him and he thought of flight ; but his courage returned ; he raised his shield to save his head from the  
30 axes ; he pierced one Englishman through with his lance ; as the Englishman fell, the lance broke in his body ; the Frenchman then seized a mace which hung at his saddle-bow, and smote down the comrade of the slain man, crushing head-piece and head with a single blow. One gallant Norman, Robert Fitz-Erneis, a near  
35 kinsman of Ralph of Tesson, died in a more daring exploit than all. He galloped, sword in hand, right towards the Standard itself. He sought for the honour of beating down the proud ensign beneath which the King of the English still kept his post. More than one Englishman died beneath his sword, but he was  
40 soon surrounded, and he fell beneath the axes of their comrades.

On the morrow his body was found stretched in death at the foot of the Standard.

Other tales of the same sort, characteristic at least, whether verbally true or not, abound in the pages of the Norman poet. All bear witness to the enduring valour displayed on both sides, 5 and to the fearful execution which was wrought by the national English weapon. But at last the effects of this sort of warfare began to tell on the English ranks. There could have been no greater trial than thus to bear up, hour after hour, in struggle which was purely defensive. The strain, and the consequent 10 weariness, must have been incomparably greater on their side than on that of their assailants. It may well have been in sheer relief from physical exhaustion that we read, now that there was no artificial defence between them and their enemies, of Englishmen rushing forward from their ranks, bounding like a 15 stag, and thus finding opportunity for the personal encounters which I have been describing. Gradually, after so many brave warriors had fallen, resistance grew fainter; but still even now the fate of the battle seemed doubtful. Many of the best and bravest of England had died, but not a man had fled; the 20 Standard still waved as proudly as ever; the King still fought beneath it. While Harold lived, while the horse and his rider still fell beneath his axe, the heart of England failed not, the hope of England had not wholly passed away. Around the two fold ensigns the war was still fiercely raging, and to that point 25 every eye and every arm in the Norman host was directed. The battle had raged ever since nine in the morning, and evening was now drawing in. New efforts, new devices, were needed to overcome the resistance of the English, diminished as were their numbers, and wearied as they were with the livelong toil of that 30 awful day. The Duke ordered his archers to shoot up in the air, that their arrows might, as it were, fall straight from heaven. The effect was immediate and fearful. No other device of the wily Duke that day did such frightful execution. Helmets were pierced; eyes were put out; men strove to guard their heads 35 with their shields, and, in so doing, they were of course less able to wield their axes. And now the supreme moment drew near. There was one point of the hill at which the Norman bowmen were bidden specially to aim with their truest skill. As twilight was coming on, a mighty shower of arrows was launched on its 40

5 deadly errand against the defenders of the Standard. There Harold still fought ; his shield bristled with Norman shafts ; but he was still unwounded and unwearied. At last another arrow, more charged with destiny than its fellows, went still more truly to its  
 10 mark. Falling like a bolt from heaven, it pierced the King's right eye ; he clutched convulsively at the weapon, he broke off the shaft, his axe dropped from his hand, and he sank in agony at the foot of the Standard. The King was thus disabled, and the fate of the day was no longer doubtful. Twenty knights  
 15 now bound themselves to lower or to bear off the ensigns which still rose as proudly as ever while Harold lay dying beneath them. But his comrades still fought ; most of the twenty paid for their venture with their lives, but the survivors succeeded in their attempt. Harold's own Standard of the Fighting Man was beaten  
 20 to the earth ; the golden Dragon, the ensign of Cuthred and Ælfred, was carried off in triumph. But Harold, though disabled, still breathed ; four knights rushed upon him and despatched him with various wounds. The Latin poet of the battle describes this inglorious exploit with great glee. One of the four was Eustace ;  
 25 in such a cowardly deed of butchery he might deem that he was repeating his old exploit at Dover. Nor are we amazed to find the son of Guy of Ponthieu foremost in doing despite to the man who had once been his father's prisoner. But one blushes to see men bearing the lofty names of Giffard and Montfort, names  
 30 soon to be as familiar to English as to Norman ears, taking a share in such low-minded vengeance on a fallen foe. The deeds of the four are enumerated, but we know not how to apportion them among the actors. One thrust pierced through the shield of the dying King and stabbed him in the breast ; another assail-  
 35 ant finished the work by striking off his head with his sword. But even this vengeance was not enough. A third pierced the dead body and scattered about the entrails ; the fourth, coming, it would seem, too late for any more efficient share in the deed, cut off the King's leg as he lay dead. Such was the measure  
 40 which the boasted chivalry of Normandy meted out to a prince who had never dealt harshly or cruelly by either a domestic or a foreign foe. But we must add, in justice to the Conqueror, that he pronounced the last and most brutal insult to be a base and cowardly act, and he expelled the perpetrator from his army.  
 45 The blow had gone truly to its mark ; but still all was not :

flight. Some fled on foot, some, like the two traitors at Maldon on the horses which had carried the fallen leaders to the battle. The Normans pursued, and, as in an earlier stage of the day, the fleeing English found means to take their revenge upon their  
 5 conquerors. On the north side of the hill the descent is steep, almost precipitous, the ground is irregular and marshy. No place could be less suited for horsemen, unaccustomed to the country, to pursue, even by daylight, light-armed foot, to many of whom every step of ground was familiar. In the darkness or imperfect  
 10 light of the evening, their case was still more hopeless than in the similar case earlier in the day. In the ardour of pursuit horse and man fell head-foremost over the steep, where they were crushed by the fall, smothered in the morass, or slain outright by the swords and clubs of the English. For the fugitives, seeing  
 15 the plight of their pursuers, once more turned and slaughtered them without mercy. Count Eustace, deeming that a new English force had come to the rescue, turned with fifty knights, and counselled William to sound a retreat. He whispered in the ear of the Duke that, if he pressed on, it would be to certain  
 20 death. The words were hardly out of his mouth, when a blow, dealt in the darkness, struck the Count between the shoulder-blades, and he was borne off with blood flowing from his mouth and nostrils. But William pressed on; his good fortune preserved him from the bad luck of his less fortunate soldiers,  
 25 and he did not return to the hill till all danger was over. This was the last scene of the battle, and no scene impressed itself, more deeply on the minds of the descendants of the victors. The name of *Malfosse*, borne for some ages by the spot where the flying English turned and took their last revenge, showed how  
 30 severe was the reverse which the victors there met with even in the very hour of their triumph.

I have thus described, as well as I could reconcile various and conflicting narratives, the chief vicissitudes and incidents of this memorable and hard-fought battle. On its historic importance  
 35 I need not dwell; it is the very subject of my history. England was not yet conquered. The invader, as it was, had hard struggles to go through before he gained full possession of the length and breadth of the land. Had Harold lived, had another like Harold been ready to take his place, we may well doubt  
 40 whether, even after the overthrow of Senlac, England would

have been conquered at all. As it was, though England was not yet conquered, yet, from this moment, her complete conquest was only a matter of time. The Norman had to face much local resistance against the establishment of his power; he had to quell many local revolts after the establishment of his power; 5 but he never again met Englishmen in a pitched battle; he never again had to fight for his Crown against a rival King at the head of a national army. Such being the case, it is from the memorable day of Saint Calixtus that we may fairly date the overthrow, what we know to have been only the imperfect and temporary 10 overthrow, of our ancient and free Tentonic England. In the eyes of men of the next generation that day was the fatal day of England, the day of the sad overthrow of our dear country, the day of her handing over to foreign lords. From that day forward the Normans began to work the will of God upon the folk 15 of England, till there were left in England no chiefs of the land of English blood, till all were brought down to bondage and to sorrow, till it was a shame to be called an Englishman, and the men of England were no more a people.

---

## EXTRACT FROM HOLMES'S GUARDIAN ANGEL.

---

### MR. CLEMENT LINDSAY FINISHES HIS LETTER— WHAT CAME OF IT.

THE first thing Clement Lindsay did, when he was fairly 20 himself again, was to finish his letter to Susan Posey. He took it up where he left off, "with an affection which"—and drew a long dash, as above. It was with great effort he wrote the lines which follow, for he had got an ugly blow on the forehead, and his eyes were "in mourning," as the gentlemen of the ring say, 25 with unbecoming levity.

"An adventure! Just as I was writing these last words, I heard the cry of a young person, as it sounded, for help. I ran to the river and jumped in, and had the pleasure of saving a life. I got some bruises which have laid me up for a day or two; but 30

I am getting over them very well now, and you need not worry about me at all. I will write again soon; so pray do not fret yourself, for I have had no hurt that will trouble me for any time."

5 Of course poor Susan Posey burst out crying, and cried as if her heart would break. Oh dear! Oh dear! what should she do! He was almost killed, she knew he was, or he had broken some of his bones. Oh dear! Oh dear! She would go and see him, there!—she must and would. He would die, she knew he  
10 would—and so on.

It was a singular testimony to the evident presence of a human element in Mr. Byles Gridley that the poor girl, in her extreme trouble, should think of him as a counsellor. But the wonderful relenting kind of look on his grave features as he  
15 watched the little twins tumbling about his great books, and certain marks of real sympathy he had sometimes shown for her in her lesser woes, encouraged her, and she went straight to his study, letter in hand. She gave a timid knock at the door of that awful sanctuary.

20 "Come in, Susan Posey," was its answer, in a pleasant tone. The old master knew her light step and the maidenly touch of her small hand on the panel.

What a sight! There were Sossy and Minthy intrenched in a Sebastopol which must have cost a good half-hour's engineering,  
25 and the terrible Byles Gridley besieging the fortress with hostile manifestations of the most singular character. He was actually discharging a large sugar-plum at the postern gate, which having been left unclosed, the missile would certainly have reached one of the garrison, when he paused as the door opened, and the  
30 great round spectacles and four wide, staring infants' eyes were levelled at Miss Susan Posey.

She almost forgot her errand, grave as it was, in astonishment at this manifestation. The old man had emptied his shelves of half their folios to build up the fort, in the midst of which he  
35 had seated the two delighted and uproarious babes. There was his Cave's "*Historia Literaria*," and Sir Walter Raleigh's "*History of the World*," and a whole array of Christian Fathers, and Plato, and Aristotle, and Stanley's book of Philosophers, with Effigies, and the Janta Galen, and Hippocrates of Foesiüs,  
40 and Walton's *Polyglot*, supported by Father Sanchez on one

side and Fox's "Acts and Monuments" on the other—an odd collection, as folios from lower shelves are apt to be.

The besieger discharged his sugar-plum, which was so well aimed that it fell directly into the lap of Minthy, who acted with it as if the garrison had been on short rations for some time. 5

He saw at once, on looking up, that there was trouble. "What now, Susan Posey, my dear?"

"O Mr. Gridley, I am in such trouble! What shall I do? What shall I do?"

She turned back the name and the bottom of the letter in such 10 a way, that Mr. Gridley could read nothing but the few lines relating the "adventure."

"So Mr. Clement Lindsay has been saving a life, has he, and got some hard knocks doing it, hey, Susan Posey? Well, well, Clement Lindsay is a brave fellow, and there is no need of hiding 15 his name, my child. Let me take the letter again a moment, Susan Posey. What is the date of it? June 16th. Yes—yes—yes!"

He read the paragraph over again, and the signature too, if he wanted to; for poor Susan had found that her secret was hardly 20 opaque to those round spectacles and the eyes behind them, and, with a not unbecoming blush, opened the fold of the letter before she handed it back.

"No, no, Susan Posey. He will come all right. His writing is steady, and if he had broken any bones he would have 25 mentioned it. It's a thing his wife will be proud of if he is ever married, Susan Posey," (blushes,) "and there's nothing to be worried about. But I'll tell you what, my dear, I've got a little business that calls me down the river to-morrow, and I shouldn't mind stopping an hour at Alderbank and seeing how 30 our young friend Clement Lindsay is; and then, if he was going to have a long time of it, why, we could manage it somehow that any friend who had any special interest in him could visit him, just to while away the tiresomeness of being sick. That's it exactly. I'll stop at Alderbank, Susan Posey. Just clear up 35 these two children for me, will you, my dear? Isosceles, come now, that's a good child. Helminthia, carry these sugar-plums down-stairs for me, and take good care of them, mind!"

It was a case of gross bribery and corruption, for the fortress was immediately evacuated on the receipt of a large paper 40

of red and white comfits, and the garrison marched down-stairs much like conquerors, under the lead of the young lady, who was greatly eased in mind by the kind words and the promise of Mr. Byles Gridley.

5 But he, in the meantime, was busy with thoughts she did not suspect. "A young person," he said to himself—"why a young person? Why not say a boy, if it was a boy? What if this should be our handsome truant? —'June 16th, Thursday morning!'—About time to get to Alderbank by the river, I should think. 10 None of the boats missing? What then? She may have made a raft, or picked up some stray skiff. Who knows? And then got shipwrecked, very likely. There are rapids and falls farther along the river. It will do no harm to go down there and look about, at any rate."

15 On Saturday morning, therefore, Mr. Byles Gridley set forth to procure a conveyance to make a visit, as he said, down the river, and perhaps be gone a day or two.

\* \* \* \* \*

Alderbank was about twenty miles down the river by the road. On arriving there, he inquired for the house where a Mr. Lindsay 20 lived. There was only one Lindsay family in town—he must mean Dr. William Lindsay. His house was up there a little way above the village, lying a few rods back from the river.

He found the house without difficulty, and knocked at the door. A motherly-looking woman opened it immediately, and held her 25 hand up as if to ask him to speak and move softly.

"Does Mr. Clement Lindsay live here?"

"He is staying here for the present. He is a nephew of ours. He is in his bed from an injury."

"Nothing very serious, I hope?"

30 "A bruise on his head—not very bad, but the doctor was afraid of erysipelas. Seems to be doing well enough now."

"Is there a young person here, a stranger?"

"There is such a young person here. Do you come with any authority to make inquiries?"

35 "I do. A young friend of mine is missing, and I thought it possible I might learn something here about it. Can I see this young person?"

The matron came nearer to Byles Gridley, and said, "This person is a young woman disguised as a boy. She was



reasoned by my nephew at the risk of his life, and she has been delirious ever since she has recovered her consciousness. She was almost too far gone to be resuscitated, but Clement put his mouth to hers, and kept her breathing until her own breath returned, and she gradually came to."

5

"Is she violent in her delirium?"

"Not now. No; she is quiet enough, but wandering—wants to know where she is, and whose the strange faces are—mine and my husband's—that's Dr. Lindsay—and one of my daughters who has watched with her."

10

"If that is so, I think I had better see her. If she is the person I suspect her to be, she will know me; and a familiar face may bring back her recollections and put a stop to her wanderings. If she does not know me, I will not stay talking with her. I think she will, if she is the one I am seeking after. There is 15 no harm in trying."

Mrs. Lindsay took a good long look at the old man. There was no mistaking his grave, honest, sturdy, wrinkled, scholarly face. His voice was assured and sincere in its tones. His decent black coat was just what a scholar's should be—old, not untidy, a little 20 shiny at the elbows with much leaning on his study-table, but neatly bound at the cuffs, where worthy Mrs. Hopkins had detected signs of fatigue, and come to the rescue. His very hat looked honest as it lay on the table. It had moulded itself to a broad, noble head, that held nothing but what was true and fair, 25 with a few harmless orotchetts just to fill in with, and it seemed to know it.

The good woman gave him her confidence at once. "Is the person you are seeking a niece or other relative of yours?"

\* \* \* \* \*

"No, she is not a relative. But I am acting for those who are." 30

"Wait a moment, and I will go and see that the room is all right."

She returned presently. "Follow me softly, if you please. She is asleep—so beautiful—so innocent!"

Bylos Gridley, Master of Arts, retired professor, more than sixty 35 years old, childless, loveless, stranded in a lonely study strewn with wrecks of the world's thought, his work in life finished, his one literary venture gone down with all it held, with nobody to care for him but accidental acquaintances, moved gently to the

side of the bed, and looked upon the pallid, still features of Myrtle Hazard. He strove hard against a strange feeling that was taking hold of him, that was making his face act rebelliously, and troubling his eyes with sudden films. He made a brief stand  
 5 against this invasion. "A weakness—a weakness!" he said to himself. "What does all this mean? Never such a thing for these twenty years! Poor child! poor child! Excuse me, madam," he said, after a little interval, but for what offence he did not mention. A great deal might be forgiven, even to a man  
 10 as old as Byles Gridley, looking upon such a face—so lovely, yet so marked with the traces of recent suffering, and even now showing by its changes that she was struggling in some fearful dream. Her forehead contracted, she started with a slight convulsive movement, and then her lips parted, and the cry  
 15 escaped from them—how heart-breaking when there is none to answer it—"Mother!"

Gone back again through all the weary, chilling years of her girlhood to that hardly remembered morning of her life when the cry she uttered was answered by the light of loving eyes, the  
 20 kiss of clinging lips, the embrace of caressing arms!

"It is better to wake her," Mr. Lindsay said; "she is having a troubled dream. Wake up, my child, here is a friend waiting to see you." She laid her hand very gently on Myrtle's forehead. Myrtle opened her eyes, but they were vacant as yet.

25 "Are we dead?" she said. "Where am I? This isn't heaven—there are no angels—Oh, no, no, no! don't send me to the other place—fifteen years—only fifteen years old—no father, no mother—nobody loved me. *Was it wicked in me to live?*" Her whole theological training was condensed in that last brief question.

30 The old man took her hand and looked her in the face with a wonderful tenderness in his squared features. "Wicked to live, my dear? No, indeed! Here! look at me, my child: don't you know your old friend Byles Gridley?"

She was awake now. The sight of a familiar countenance  
 35 brought back a natural train of thought. But her recollection passed over everything that had happened since Thursday morning.

"Where is the boat I was in?" she said. "I have just been in the water, and I was dreaming that I was drowned. Oh,  
 40 Mr. Gridley, is that you? Did you pull me out of the water?"

"No, my dear, but you are out of it, and safe and sound—that is the main point. How do you feel now you are awake?"

She yawned, and stretched her arms, and looked round, but did not answer at first. This was all natural, and a sign that she was coming right. She looked down at her dress. It was not 5 inappropriate to her sex, being a loose gown that belonged to one of the girls in the house.

"I feel pretty well," she answered, "but a little confused. My boat will be gone, if we don't run and stop it now. How did you got me into dry clothes so quick?" 10

Master Byles Gridley found himself suddenly possessed by a large and luminous idea of the state of things, and made up his mind in a moment as to what he must do. There was no time to be lost. Every day, every hour of Myrtle's absence was not only a source of anxiety and a cause of useless searching, but it 15 gave room for inventive fancies to imagine evil. It was better to run some risk of injury to health, than to have her absence prolonged another day.

"Has this adventure been told about the village, Mrs. Lindsay?"

"No, we thought it best to wait until she could tell her own 20 story, expecting her return to consciousness every hour, and thinking there might be some reason for her disguise which it would be kinder to keep quiet about."

"You know nothing about her, then?"

"Not a word. It was a great question whether to tell the 25 story and make inquiries; but she was safe, and could hardly bear disturbance, and, my dear sir, it seemed too probable that there was some sad story behind this escape in disguise, and that the poor child might need shelter and retirement. We meant to do as well as we could for her." 30

"All right, Mrs. Lindsay. You do not know who she is, then?"

"No, sir; and perhaps it is as well that I should not know. Then I shall not have to answer any questions about it."

"Very good, madam—just as it should be. And your family, 35 are they as discreet as yourself?"

"Not one word of the whole story has been or will be told by any one of us. That was agreed upon among us."

"Now then, madam. My name, as you heard me say, is Byles Gridley. Your husband will know it, perhaps; at any rate, I 40

will wait until he comes back. This child is of good family and of good name. I know her well, and mean, with your kind help, to save her from the consequences which her foolish adventure might have brought upon her. Before the bells ring for meeting to-morrow morning this girl must be in her bed at her home, at Oxbow Village, and we must keep her story to ourselves as far as may be. It will all blow over if we do. The gossips will only know that she was upset in the river, and cared for by some good people—good people and sensible people too, Mrs. Lindsay.

10 And now I want to see the young man that rescued my friend here—Clement Lindsay—I have heard his name before."

Clement was not a beauty for the moment, but Master Gridley saw well enough that he was a young man of the right kind. He knew them at sight—fellows with lime enough in their bones, 15 and iron enough in their blood to begin with, shapely, large-veined, firm-fibred, and fine-fibred, with well-spread bases to their heads for the ground-flour of the faculties, and well-vaulted arches for the upper range of apprehensions and combinations. "Plenty of basements," he used to say, "without attics and skylights. 20 Plenty of skylights without rooms enough and space enough below." But here was "a three-story brain," he said to himself, as he looked at it, and this was the youth who was to find his complement in our pretty little Susie Posey! His judgment may seem to have been hasty, but he took the measure of young men 25 of twenty at sight from long and sagacious observation, as Nurse Byloe knew the "heft" of a baby the moment she fixed her old eyes on it.

Clement was well acquainted with Byles Gridley, though he had never seen him, for Susan's letters had had a good deal to say 30 about him of late. It was agreed between them that the story should be kept as quiet as possible, and that the young girl should not know the name of her deliverer—it might save awkward complications. It was not likely that she would be disposed to talk of her adventure, which had ended so disastrously, and thus 35 the whole story would soon die out.

The effect of the violent shock she had experienced was to change the whole nature of Myrtle for the time. Her mind was unsettled; she could hardly recall anything except the plunge over the fall. She was perfectly docile and plastic, was ready to 40 go anywhere Mr. Gridley wanted her to go, without any sign of

while Miss Badlam waited for an explanation before giving way to her feelings—Mr. Gridley put the essential facts before them in a few words. She had gone down the river some miles in her boat, which was upset by a rush of the current, and she had come very  
5 near being drowned. She was got out, however, by a person living near by, and cared for by some kind women in a house near the river, where he had been fortunate enough to discover her. Who cut her hair off! Perhaps those good people—she had been out of her head. She was alive and unharmed, at any rate,  
10 wanting only a few day's rest. They might be very thankful to get her back, and leave her to tell the rest of her story when she had got her strength and memory, for she was not quite herself yet, and might not be for some days.

And so there she was at last laid in her own bed, listening  
15 again to the ripple of the waters beneath her, Miss Silence sitting on one side looking as sympathetic as her insufficient nature allowed her to look; the Irishwoman, uncertain between delight at Myrtle's return, and sorrow for her condition; and Miss Cynthia Badlam occupying herself about house-matters, not  
20 unwilling to avoid the necessity of displaying her conflicting emotions.

Before he left the house, Mr. Gridley repeated the statement in the most precise manner—some miles down the river—upset and nearly drowned—rescued almost dead—brought to and cared for  
25 by kind women in the house where he, Byles Gridley, found her. These were the facts, and nothing more than this was to be told at present.

---

# NOTES.

## COWPER'S LETTERS.

["Hints on the Study of English" is referred to throughout under the initial "H."]

Page 1. line 2. *Latitude of excursion.* Liberty to wander away from the subject and talk of different matters.

4. *Bolus.* Literally a ball of medicine, a pill. Pills were gilded to hide their nauseousness. Give the simile corresponding to this use of the metaphor.

12. *Long-winded metaphor.* 'Long-winded' is primarily applied to tedious speakers, who do not easily lose their breath; then to their discourses. Here it means metaphors wherein an endeavour is made to carry out the comparison into minute particulars.

13. *Halt.* Limp, i.e. become inapplicable or confused. What other meaning has this word?

13-14. *So does mine.* The metaphor of 'gilding the pill' becomes confused when he enters into particulars of the 'gold leaf' with which gilding is done and the 'tarulshing' of it by the 'vapours' or melancholy thoughts of his mind.

14. *I deal ... in ink.* I use ink, not for writing but for drawing.

P. 2. l. 4. *Unawakened.* In a religious sense = 'unconscious of one's state as a sinner.'

18. *Frame of four lights.* A frame-work containing four plates of glass to protect delicate fruits.

19. *Worth a farthing.* Give other instances of adjectives governing a case. What is the usual construction with *worthy*?

27. *Last Wednesday.* Parso *last.* Distinguish between *intest* and *last*: *latter* & *later*: *oldest* & *eldest*: *lesser* & *less*: *worser* & *worse.* See H., p. 72.

30. *Just going.* *Just*, as an adverb, means 'barely, almost,' 'on the point of.'

31. *In about five minutes.* Observe this use of *in*, where Bengali and other languages would require *after.* See H., p. 271, § 89.

34. *In sunder.* The use of 'in sunder,' as equal to *asunder*, points to the force of *a* in such words, as *a-bed*, *a-shore*, *a-year*, *a-live.* See H., p. 101, § 78.

P. 3. l. 4. *From thence.* Strictly speaking, the *from* is unnecessary, as *thence* = *from there.* We have other instances of two equivalent forms joined in one phrase; see note, p. 60. l. 20.

5. *Redoubtable.* A word used now-a-days mock-heroically, in humorous allusion to its old meaning *formidable.* So, 'doughty.'

13. *That soon after, &c.* Turn this passage into Direct Speech.  
 18. *Right through the town.* Parse *right*.  
 20. *Got the start.* Explain. What does *start* mean in 'By fits and starts?'  
 21. *Pushed for.* Explain, and compare 'to push on' (of a traveller), 'to make a push for,' 'to make for.'  
 29. *O'clock.* For what letter does the apostrophe here stand? Mention other expressions in which the apostrophe takes the place of a letter.  
 57. *Nihil mei.* Cowper says 'Nothing concerning me do you consider uninteresting to you.' Terence's actual words are 'I am a man: nothing concerning man do I consider uninteresting to me.'

P. 4. l. 2. *Case.* A pretended law-case, 'Nose, plaintiff, v. Eyes, defendants,' of which C. had written a report in verse.

2. *Verifying.* This is the verbal substantive: originally 'of' was inserted after it, and the preposition governed the succeeding noun. According to modern grammarians, Hiley (page 143, § 410,) is mistaken in calling it a participle, and again (p. 52, § 174,) in saying that the verbal substantive governs the objective case. The original construction is 'of (the) verifying (of) the decisions.' See H., p. 97.

6. *Precedents,* 'previous cases,' by a reference to which subsequent decisions are come to.

6. *Wanted.* Give the meaning here, and other meanings.

16. *It seems, i.e.,* from what you tell me.

18. *Costermonger* = So mean and mercenary as to be fit only for costermongers.

Cp. 'Virtue is of so little count in these *costermonger* days.'

Shaks. II. Hen. IV., l. 2.

22. *Curtain.* Objective case governed by the prepositional phrase 'on this side' (Lat. *cis*.) Cp. *beside.* Milton has 'On this side nothing.' See H., pp. 110-3.

25. *The Lords, i.e.,* the members of the House of Lords.

29. *Let it alone.* A common colloquial phrase; = leave the business (of writing) untouched.

P. 5. l. 7. *Like a true knight.* One of the laws of ancient chivalry or knight-hood was devotion and obedience to fair ladies.

9. *In the press, &c.* He here quotes a formal advertisement of his coming book: the words 'there is now —' are omitted in such advertisements to save space.

21. *Mr. Newton writes.* The present tense here denotes the fixed and certain character of the action. Similarly, '*I go to Calcutta tomorrow*' points to the fact that there is no doubt about my going. The event is so certain that that it is spoken of as if already happening.

84. *All peradventures.* Any part of speech in English can be turned into a noun: cp. above, 'must admits of no apology.'

85. *Out I come* = my book is 'coming out,' or is to be published. Why this order of words?

85-86. *I shall be glad of* = I shall be glad to receive.

87. *My muse &c.* Explain.

P. 6. l. 1. *Boudoir.* A French word, naturalized in English. Give examples of words similarly introduced from your vernacular.

8. *Opens into*. Give the force of 'open up,' 'open upon,' in the phrases, 'to open up communications,' and 'he ordered the guns to open upon them.'

5. *Orchard*. A disguised word. derive. See II., p. 55.

6. *Smoking room*. Compare 'drinking-water,' 'writing-master.' These should always be written with the hyphen being compound words, formed by joining two substantives, as are *cart-horse*, *rose-tree*. The first part is the verbal substantive and not the participle.

6. *Trap door*. Similarly this should be printed 'trap-door.'

13. *Thanks*. Parse.

19. *You would have received*. The first half of this conditional sentence is not expressed. Express it, beginning with 'If——' What is the force of 'or' here? See II., p. 115.

20. *It is more*. To what does it refer?

21. *Proof* = Proof-sheet, a rough printed copy of the manuscript, sent to the author for correction. Explain the meaning of the word *proof* in 'armour of proof,' 'spirit above proof.'

23. *Hit*. Give exact meaning here: also of *hit off*, *hit upon*.

31. *To indulge*. Is this the same as 'to indulge in?'

P. 7. 1. 2. *Vain*. Parse.

5-6. *With all his recommendations*. 'With' here almost = 'in spite of.' See II., p. 163, (b).

9. *Mynny*. Parse.

9. *Amends*. Give other words used only in the plural.

11. *You had been gone, when &c.* Turn this sentence into as many different forms as you can, preserving the sense.

14. *The clap*. Account for the use of the definite article here.

18. *The moment*. Parse.

22. *Precisely*. Adverb, qualifying what?

29. *Drunk*. What is the difference in use between *drunk* and *drunken*? See II., p. 100.

P. 8. 1. 7. *Friday*. The date on which the letter, interrupted by the walk, is recommenced.

4. *Sides*, i.e., pages of writing-paper.

18. *A taste that*. Parse 'that.'

17. *With you*. Give the exact force of *with* here. See II., p. 163 (2.)

20. *Franked*. Made free of postage by having the name of a lord or of a Member of Parliament signed out-side, as the names of officials on public letters at the present day. This was when postage was very expensive, before the 'pony post' system.

20. *Need*. Conjugate this verb.

30. *To feel*. Explain the exact force of this construction.

33. *A thousand times*. Indefinite, = many times. Parse *thousand*. See II., p. 75.

P. 9. 1. 6. *Forgot*. The other form 'forgotten' would be used now-a-days.

9. *These few years*. 'These' here = 'the last.' Cp. 'I have not seen him this long time.'

10. *Twelve month*. Account for the singular number. See II., p. 60, § 2.



in Shakspeare; 'Every of your wishes' *Ant. and Cleop. ii*, 2. The modern phrase is 'each and all.'

P. 14. 1. 1. *Hand* = handwriting: give other special phrases containing 'bond.' See II., p. 172.

8. *Stout* = 'strong,' not 'fat.'

8. *Therefore it is*. 'Therefore' is here the predicator: 'It is for this reason.'

14. *Distant*. Parse.

24. *MS*. Give the plural form of this: also of *lb.*, *Mrs.*, *Mrs.*

29. *At heart*. Why not 'at my heart?'

38. *Spare for* = 'be wanting in: 'for' here = 'in point of.'

67-88. *Will see . . . shall be welcome*. 'Will' is printed in italics because he doubts whether Maty is willing to look over his MS. 'Shall be welcome' = I will make him welcome.

P. 15. 1. 2. *The very words*. For this use of *very*, see II., p. 109.

7. *Twelve*. Parse.

9. *A bubble*. A deception, promise without performance.

12. *Touchstone*. Expand this metaphor into its corresponding simile.

50. *Specimen*. The MS. copy mentioned in the last letter.

63. *Quiet him again*. Notice that *again* has two meanings: (1), afresh, a second time; (2), back. Cp. 'To go and come *again*.' Which is the meaning here?

P. 16. 1. 1. *Strictures*. Derive, and explain the meaning here.

6-7. *I shall hear. . . I will show*. A good illustration of the difference between *shall* and *will*. Explain.

7. *Alcove*. A sort of arbour that the poet took a delight in, as Pope did in his grotto.

11. *For your life* = at the risk of your life. See II., p. 148.

11. *Visitors*. Now generally spelt *visitors*. Distinguish between *sailor* and *sailer*.

11. *But* = *that not*. Give other uses of *but*. See II., p. 87.

15. *Greenhouse*. A house to shelter plants during winter.

28. *Imprimis* = *in the first place*.

24. *Either side*. *Either* is frequently used in the sense of *both*.

27. *Promises*. How does this use differ from the common meaning?

32. *Paralytic*. Humourously used for 'rickety.'

34. *Farther*. The *th* in this word is a mis-spelling and was introduced in imitation of the *th* in *further* from *forth*. Cp. *could* from *can* on the analogy of *would*.

40. *I have told Homer*. A playful way of asserting that he has examined the works of Homer and found that the word *cash* in his translation is more correct than *urn*.

P. 17. 1. 14. *Well sashed*. With a good number of windows.

14. *By much*. Give other examples of this use of *by*. See II., p. 147

15. *The living*, i.e. the amount of the Viceroy's stipend.

25. *Command*. Give exact meaning.

26. *A certain poet.* Cowper himself. See *Task*, iv. 1:  
O'er yonder bridge  
That with its wearisome but needful length &c.

P. 18. l. 4. *Even unto death.* Give exact force of *unto*.

5. *Before this time twelvemonth,* i.e. before twelve months have elapsed from the present time: a phrase in common use, the construction of which is not easily accounted for.

7. *Have ... by heart* = have an intimate knowledge of.

8. *Be you.* Imperative mood.

10. *One feels.* For this use of *one*, see II, p. 88.

86-87. *Behshemites.* See English Bible, I Samuel, vi. 19.

33. *Kerr.* The physician alluded to before.

P. 19. l. 1. *Set me up.* A common colloquial phrase, = 'make me well again.' Give the meanings of 'set him down for a fool'; 'he wants setting down'; 'to set up for a philosopher'; 'to set up a shout.' See II., p. 169.

2. *Gog or Magog.* Two large images of giants preserved in Guildhall, London.

3. *I did actually live.* The emphatic form (*did*) is used here, because it is an answer to an enquiry made in one of Lady H.'s letters to the poet.

6. *There was I and so.* We must take 'and the future L. C.' to be a contracted sentence with the words 'there was' understood.

10. *That inimitable head of his.* The common explanation of phrases like this is that we must supply the noun in the plural number after the pronoun. Thus 'that head of his' would become 'that head of his heads.'—See II., p. 70, § 14. Perhaps the real solution is that it is an instance of two similar forms united as in the double comparatives *lesser, worse* (Cp. *the very best*): and is thus a *double possessive*.

13. *Set her a-going.* The old construction is here seen in full; *going*, the verbal substantive, governed by *a* (= on) the preposition. For another instance, see note, p. 30. l. 20.

17. *Wilton.* A famous English divine, appointed Archbishop of Canterbury in A.D. 1691.

17. *Better*, i.e. better sermons.

21. *So much.* What do these words qualify?

22. *The more.* *The* here is not the definite article, but an adverb, formerly spelt *thi*, the ablative case of *that*. See II., p. 84.

24. *Writing day.* This should be spelt *writing-day*, a noun compounded of two other nouns. See note, p. 30. l. 20.

26. *Time's forelock.* To what proverb does this refer? Show the exact application of the metaphor. See II., p. 146, § 22.

29. *Else.* Expand this word into a sentence.

33. *A farthing.* What case and why? Observe that it is not governed by *care*.

P. 20. l. 2. *Shall have performed.* The *shall* here points to the steadiness and certainty of the moon's journey. See II., p. 118.

3. *Tedious revolutions they are.* Why is the usual order inverted?

7-8. *Give them joy of you.* Congratulate them on possessing you as a relation.

14-15. *My cousin Agamemnon.* Cowper playfully adopts Agamemnon, the great king among the Greeks before Troy, as his cousin, denoting how familiar Homer's

characters had become to him. Agamemnon says (*Iliad*, I, 140). 'But we will consider these matters at another time.'

19. *Pretty much*. Cp. 'A fairly correct likeness.'

23. *Express*. Derive, and trace from the root the present meaning.

28. *Against you count*. See II., p. 141 (3)

P. 21. l. 4-5. *But a few more weeks*. We have here an instance of ambiguity in the use of *but*; it might be either *conjunction* or *adverb*. See II., p. 207, V (3).

6. *Could not fail to do*. Observe this use of the verb *to do* as a substitute for another verb, to avoid repetition. For the various uses of this auxiliary, see II., p. 262.

8. *Cordial*. A strengthening medicine, that makes one strong and *heartily* (Lat. *cor*, heart).

8. *That I shall feel the effect of*. Hilley's rule (§ 425) that 'the preposition should in formal composition be placed immediately *before* the relative' is uncalled for. When the relative is *that*, the preposition is *always* put after it.

11-12. *Of Mr. Throckmorton*. *Of* here = *from*; cp. 'I had it *of* you.' See II., p. 151.

12. *A much better*. In more serious composition we should write 'a much better one.'

15-16. *As will ... make*. What is nominative to 'will make'?

20. *Seven months*. Observe that no preposition is needed in English to express *duration of time*.

28. *Is ... arrived*. With verbs of motion, the Present-perfect Tense is rightly formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, when a *state* is to be expressed, and by the verb *have*, when an *action* is referred to. Thus '*is arrived*' calls attention to the fact of Lady H. being still there, more strongly than '*Are arrived*' would. Now-a-days, perhaps, the form with *have* is more common of persons, and that with *is*, of things. See II., p. 22, § 74.

P. 22. l. 10. *To partake*. *Partee*.

12. *Rang her into*. *Parse* her, and give other instances of intransitive verbs employed with a transitive force.

14. *Lo d Dartmouth excepted*. We here see what was the original form of the so-called preposition *except*. It was originally *excepted*, a participle agreeing with the noun it is now said to govern. (In II., p. 111, these apparent prepositions are explained as imperatives. Expressions like the above, however, seem to point rather to their origin being participial.)

20. *Left me flat*. *Parse flat*.

21. *Sable had been my suit*. Black clothes being a sign of mourning. The meaning is that the poet was melancholy.

31-35. *Expects us*. Is waiting for us, is ready for us to enter.

P. 23. l. 5. *Neighbourhood*. Here = 'neighbours'; generally used of *place* not *persons*.

6. *In the Throckmortons*. Give other instances of this use of *in*.

14. *High time* = quite time, full time. Explain 'high life,' 'high treason,' 'high seas.'

17. *Left myself room*. *Parse myself*.

25. *Prove* = 'turn out to be': how does it get this meaning?

34. *Not figuratively foreshewing* &c. There being no finite verb in this sentence it would be more correct, as regards grammar, to put a comma after *passenger* and make this sentence a part of the preceding one. But liberties like this are allowable in letter-writing.

P. 24. l. 3. *My transcriber also*, i.e. my transcriber, besides being my cousin.

5. *To lament*. Parse.

7. *This winter itself*. Why is the objective put before the verb?

13. *Compensate*. Modern authors sometimes, but wrongly, write 'compensate for.'

15. *O, for you to partake*. 'To partake' is here either, (a) the infinitive present tense governed by the preposition *for*, and having you as the accusative before it; or (b) the gerund = 'for the purpose of partaking;' and 'O for you' = 'I wish you were here.'

22. *Unfurnished*, i.e. when it (the house) is unfurnished.

23. *Mebles*. French for *moveables*, i.e. moveable furniture; chaire, tables, &c.

29. *Those lines*. *Those* here has the force of *those well known*.

31. *Sooner*, i.e. before euperannuation, before he became old and weary.

P. 25. l. 4. *Sashes*. Windows.

14. *And from . . . which*. The insertion of *and* before *who* or *which* is an irregularity, which however is found in writers like Burke and Robertson. The *and* has no business before a relative unless to join it to a preceding relative.

18. *Wintry as the weather is*. *As* here almost = *though*.

23. *Alcore*. Give other instances of words derived from Arabic, which have the Arabic article *al* (= the) prefixed.

P. 26. l. 2-3. *Only to disappoint*. Parse the verb.

11. *Small of her age*. Explain this use of *of*.

16. *Suit*. Derive, and classify the various meanings of this word. See H., p. 50, § 23.

24-25. *No, not as*. The colloquial *No* is introduced as if he were replying to a question. Such expressions make Cowper's style familiar and pleasant reading.

27. *Suffice it*. Parse the verb.

30. *None*. This word is here in the singular, = not one.

35. *Invaluable*. Derive, and give exact meaning.

P. 27. l. 5. *Felled*. Give the intransitive form of *fell*, also of *lay*, *seat*, *drench*, *raise*.

11. *Utmost*. The *m* in this word is a remnant of the old superlative ending; so that in this and similar words we have a double superlative, *m* + *ost*. *Uttermost* should properly be spelt *ute-m-ost*, the *r* being an insertion. Cp. the *l* in *could* and the *th* in *farther*.

23. *Reynard*. A proper name, given to a fox that was the hero of a great German epic poem. It means 'strong-in-counsel:' spelt also *Renard*.

26. *Fall in my way*. Give the meaning of *fall* with *out*, *through*, *in with*.

35. *Swallowed it whole*. Parse *whole*.

36. *Bolus*. See note, p. 1. l. 4.

P. 28 l. 1. *Desired*. What is the meaning here?

1-2. *By this time*. How does this differ from 'at this time?' See H., p. 146.

8. *Six times.* Parse times: no preposition is understood.
10. *In at the death.* This is the usual sporting term; 'present at the death.'
17. *To the purpose.* Give the exact meaning, and other instances of a similar use of *to*. See H., p. 158, (d).
21. *Would that.* This phrase looks like an imperative of desire, but it is probably contracted from 'I would that,' a form we often meet with.
22. *One string.* Give the proverbial phrase alluded to and the exact meaning here.
25. *In the natural way.* 'In the way of—' or 'on the subject of— Natural History.'
32. *Somewhat.* A substantive pronoun; = some object.

P. 29. l. 4. *Blown.* Not connected with 'blow,' of wind, but from the same root as '*flow-er*.' See H., p. 43.

15. *Presently* = After a short time. This gives us an instance of how words change their meaning. *Presently* originally meant 'at the *present* time,' 'at once.' Compare 'by and by,' which once meant 'forthwith,' and now means 'after some time.' Similarly, *directly*, in 'I am coming directly,' means 'after a few moments.' See H., pp. 51, 52, and 148 (Note).

## SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

### NELSON'S EARLY LIFE.

Page 29, lino 20-21. *Named after.* Give other instances of this use of *after*. See H., p. 148.

30. *Go to sea.* Conventional phrase for 'become a sailor.' Why not 'go to the sea?'

P. 30. l. 10. *Rough it out.* It may be parsed here as a cognate accusative. See H., pp. 180, 181. *Out* is here used adverbially—with what force?

18. *The boy* = the kind of boy.

14. *To bring.* This is not the present infinitive after *chosen*, but the gerund, = 'for the bringing up.' Give the force of *bring* with the words *in*, *out*, *round*, *about*, *off*.

20. *A bird's-nesting.* A good example to show how the usual form 'he went fishing' has arisen from the omission of the preposition *a* (= on) *fishing*, like *bird's-nesting* here, is not the participle, but the verbal noun in the objective case. See H., p. 96.

35. *Shall not go.* Why is *shall* used here and not *will*? Give the rules for the use of *shall* and *will*, and *should* and *would*.

36. *Leave it.* It here stands for 'the choice of going or not going.'

38. *To have afforded.* What is implied by the use of the form with *have* here? What might 'deep enough to *afford*' imply? See H., pp. 124, 125.

P. 31. l. 7-8. *Without reserving.* Parse *reserving*,—not present participle. See H., p. 96.

9. *Every other boy*. What other meaning has the phrase *every other*?
10. *Early*. Parse.
17. *Stage* = stage-coach: give other meanings of *stage*, and shew how they all contain the idea of *station*, or fixed position.
21. *Forlorn*. What is the force of the prefix *for* here, and in *for-bid*, *for-swear*?
25. *The whole remainder of the day*. Observe that no preposition is required to express duration of time. Distinguish between the use of *whole*, *the whole*, *the whole of*. See H., p. 254.
33. *Never do we*. Why is the subject placed after the auxiliary verb?
40. *The service*, i.e. the naval service: so soldiers talk of the army as 'the service.'

P. 32. l. 1. *Commissioned*, i.e. 'put into commission,' a technical phrase meaning to appoint and make ready for public service a ship that has been laid up in harbour.

2. *Respecting*. Parse. What part of speech originally? Give similar 'apparent prepositions.' See H., p. 118.

2. *Paid off*, i.e. the sailors received their pay up to date and were discharged, the number of the ships company being reduced to those actually required in harbour. Give the force of *off* in *sell off*, *die off*, *finish off*, *take off*, *show off*.

4. *Seventy-four*. A short official form, = carrying 74 guns.

6. *A voyage*. Parse: no preposition is understood. See H., p. 112.

8. *Master's mate*. The 'master' in a man-of-war is a subordinate officer who has immediate charge of the ship's steering and sailing.

11. *Aft*, i.e. in the *after* part, near the stern, where the officers are quartered. See H., p. 142.

12. *Forward*, i.e. in the *fore* part, near the bows, where the common sailors are quartered.

16. *Discotering*. What two meanings has this word?

17. *Held it out*. What does *it* relate to?

27. *Were fitting out*. Another instance of an apparently active participle in a passive sense. See note, p. 49. l. 22, and H., p. 96.

9-50. *Effective*. A naval term, meaning capable of doing all the work required of a sailor. How does this word differ in meaning from *effectual*, *efficient*?

40. *Greenlandmen*. Ships trading to Greenland: so we have *India-man*, *man-of-war*.

P. 33. l. 4-5. *To the wish*. Give the exact force of *to* here. See H., p. 157.

16. *Best*. Give the force of the prefix *be*; and in *be-swear*, *be-head*.

23. *Apparent*. What two meanings has this word? What is its force in 'hair-apparent'?

28. *Young ice*. What does *young* mean here?

39. *Two lengths of each other*. *Of* here = *off*, *away from*, see H., p. 16 (g).

P. 34. l. 2. *Mainyard*. Give other meanings of *moin*. See H., p. 173.

13. *Of several acres square*. We have here a mixture of two constructions, (1) a field of several acres (Cp. 'a crown of gold'), and (2) a field several acres square (Cp. 'a field two miles long').

19. *Young as he was.* 'As,' when it has this position in the sentence almost = *though*: not = *since*. Hence 'Ill as I am, I am unable to attend the College' is wrong: it should be 'As (or since) I am ill, &c.'

31. *Mid-watch.* The night was divided into three periods of four hours each, for each of which a set of men was appointed to *watch* over the ship.

34. *Stole from.* Give other verbs similarly used. See H., p. 92, §65.

36. *It was not long.* To what does it refer?

P. 35 l. 8. *Flashed in the pan,* i.e. did not explode thoroughly; the powder in the external pan ignited without communicating with that in the barrel.

6. *Do but let, &c. . . . and we shall, &c.* Analyse these sentences, and express the meaning in one sentence.

22. *Fresh.* Give the meaning of *fresh* here, also in 'a *fresh* morning,' 'a *fresh* egg,' 'fresh meat.'

31. *Too often.* Explain the use of *too* here. See H., p. 264.

31. *Driven.* Used passively; = *drifted*.

36. *Take the ground.* For other idiomatic uses of *take*, see H., p. 70.

P. 36 l. 9. *True.* Give the exact force of *true* here: also in 'a *true* copy,' 'a *true* bill.'

13-14. *Got a mile.* See H., p. 166: and below 'get the boats to the water's edge.'

16. *All sail.* A technical phrase, = the full number of sails available.

18-19. *Water's edge.* What two forms are there to express a possessive idea in English? What is the general distinction between them, in use? If we say 'water's edge,' why not 'verandah's door?' Cp. 'Land's end.' See H., p. 70.

23. *A party was.* We find above 'a party were': account for this difference.

25. *Heary.* Give exact meaning: also in 'a *heary* road,' 'heary expenses,' 'a *heary* discourse.'

27. *Something.* Used adverbially: we generally use *somewhat* in this sense.

38. *Struck,* i.e. against the surrounding ice.

39. *Bower.* An adjective; = 'hung at the bows.'

40. *Made way.* What is another common meaning of the phrase 'make way?'

P. 37 l. 31. *At watch and watch* = at alternate watch; compare the phrase 'turn and turn about.'

31. *Rated him,* i.e. entered him on the ship's register. Give another and more usual meaning of this term.

P. 39 l. 6. *Likes himself.* Parse *himself*; and give instances of similar constructions.

13. '*I felt impressed, &c.*' Put Nelson's words into the indirect form.

### SIEGE OF SANTA CRUZ.

22. *Twelve days.* Parse *days*. See H., p. 111.

22. *Rencontre* = casual combat, collision: a word naturalized from the French.

25. *Had put into.* Give exact meaning: compare 'to put about,' 'to put back' See H., p. 167.

28. 'I do not...mountains.' Turn into the Indirect Speech. For rules, see H., p. 125.

80. *There were.* Parse *there*.

P. 39. L. 7. *The army from Elba . . . in one day.* Turn into the Direct Speech.

11. *Easy of access.* *Of* here denotes point of reference. See H., p. 152.

13-14. *Homeward bound* = on her voyage home. Has this word *bound* any connection with the past of 'bind'? See H., p. 46. Webster confuses the two.

16. *Scale* = proportion. What is the derivation of this word? See H., p. 49.

25-26. *By midnight.* Distinguish between 'by midnight' and 'at midnight.'

32-33. *Upon this.* See H., p. 166 (5).

86. *Stood in* = sailed towards the shore. To stand a person in (a sum) = to cost. Give meanings of 'stand' with — out, over, by, for, off, to.

88. *A calm and contrary current.* Notice that *calm* is a noun here. The article 'a' should have been repeated before *contrary*; — by what rule?

P. 40. L. 2. *Wind and tide.* Why not 'tide and wind'? Give other similar phrases in which a like order of words is preserved. See H., p. 185.

2. *Point of honour* = a rule of honour. *Point* literally means 'a prick, a mark,' hence, 'that which serves to mark or regulate.' Cp. 'to make a point of doing anything.' Give any other uses of 'point.'

16. *Laurel or cypress.* Emblems of victory and of death.

18. *Should I fall.* Account for the order of the words. See H., p. 127.

20. *How desperate a service.* Observe the order.

28-29. *If I never go again.* Give the exact force of this sentence.

32. *At table.* Why is the article omitted?

88. *They were to land.* For this idiom, see H., p. 124.

80. *Form.* Reflexive, = 'form themselves,' i.e. draw up in military array.

P. 41. L. 23. *From each other.* 'One-another' would have been more correct here. Why?

6. *Opened upon* = fired upon; a military term.

12. *Carried* = captured, of fortified places.

14. *Six-and-twenty pounders*, i.e. carrying that weight of shot. Cp. 'a three-decker,' 'a two-master,' 'a four-wheeler.'

14. *Spiked.* To spike a gun is to drive an iron spike into the touch-hole and so render it useless.

22. *A relic.* What is the meaning here? State the ordinary meaning.

28. *Vessels.* Classify the various meanings of this word.

28. *Had it not been.* Why is the subject placed after the verb? See H., p. 127.

33. *Afloat.* Parse. — See H., pp. 101, 189.

36. *Desired.* What is the meaning here?

P. 42. L. 8. *At the risk.* Give the force of *at* here, and mention other instances.

8. *I had rather* = I would rather. For 'rather,' see H., p. 72. This expression has perhaps arisen from a false idea that the contracted form 'I'd rather' stood for 'I had rather,' whereas it really is for 'I would rather.'



10. *Tidings... of her husband.* What does *of* mean here? Could we say 'her husband's tidings?' See II., p. 152.

12. *Peremptorily* = authoritatively, entirely. Derive.

12-13. *So impatient was he.* Account for the order of the words.

15-16. *Left hand... my legs left.* Is *left* the same word in both sentences? See II., p. 44.

17. *To make haste.* Collect similar idioms, as: 'make love,' 'make sail,' 'make way,' 'make amends,' 'make oath,' 'make room,' 'make pretence.' Give meaning of 'make' with — out, up, against, for, at, over.

18-19. *The sooner — the better.* Parse *the — the.* See II., p. 81.

24. *To the great regret.* *To* = effect, end. See II., p. 157.

34. *A few men.* What would 'few men' have meant?

37. *Town's people.* Generally written as one word, *towns-people*.

P. 43. l. 4. *Small-arm seamen.* Explain. What would have been the meaning of 'small-armed seamen.' Cp. 'a four-foot rule' and a 'four-footed animal,' 'a left-hand side' and a 'left-handed man.'

5. *Made good.* See II., p. 178. For instances of 'make' with adjectives, compare 'make merry,' 'make light of,' 'make free with,' 'make sure of.'

8. *Commanded* = 'held within the sphere of influence or control.' So, 'to command a view,' 'a commanding height.'

8-9. *Field-pieces.* Smaller cannon used in the field of battle; opposed to siege or fort guns. See note, p. 78. l. 40.

10. *Under arms* = with arms in their hands. For similar phrases, see H. p. 160.

15. *Set fire to it.* For uses of 'set,' see II., p. 168.

16. *This however... given up.* Turn this passage into the Direct Speech.

21. *Be wanting.* With passive sense. See II., p. 92, § 65, (b).

25. *Surrender.* Reflexive, = surrender themselves.

28-29. *At the point of the bayonet.* Explain. See II., p. 145, (3).

34. *The moment.* Parse.

37. *Made it known that.* Explain this use of *it*.

40. *Of the island.* What is the meaning of *of* here? See II., p. 153.

P. 44. l. 1. *Stripped himself of.* Explain this use of *of*.

3. *To thank* = 'for thanking,' Dative Infinitive.

21. *The remains of my carcass.* 'Remains' is used only in the plural number.

24. *Male room.* See note above.

25. *A sounder man.* Give the meaning of 'sound' here. What does it mean in 'a sound sleep,' 'a sound flogging,' 'a sound doctrine?'

27. *Strain* = style. Give other meanings.

27. *'It was the chance—an event.'* Turn into the Indirect Speech.

31. *My mind has long been made up to.* Explain fully.

P. 45. l. 2. *The freedom of the cities* = the franchise, the privileges belonging to a citizen.

5. *As a matter of form.* Explain.

9. *In cutting out of harbour,* i.e. vessels.

14. *Fifty sail.* How does 'fifty sail' differ in meaning from 'fifty sails?'

28. *Under the confusion,* i.e. in spite of the confusion that prevailed.

- P. 40. 1. 4-5. *Form of thanksgiving.* To be publicly read in the Church service.  
 6. The minister of St. George's, i.e. the clergyman of St. George's church.  
 10. *A year's pay.* May we say 'pay of a year?' State the rule distinguishing the two forms of the *periphrasis*. See II., p. 70.  
 10. *Smart money* = money allowed in consideration of wounds and injuries received in the service. Give the different meanings of 'smart' in 'a smart blow,' 'a smart saying,' 'a smart letter,' 'a smart dress,' 'a smart workman.'  
 14. *Notorious.* How does this word differ in meaning from 'noted,' 'notable,' 'noticeable?'  
 19. *Observed* = said, remarked.  
 20. *It had been well* = it would have been (wob). *more* (I); i.e. he thought it would have proved to be more, when he came to draw it.

---

## WHITE'S NATURAL HISTORY OF SELBORNE.

---

Page 40, line 25. *A minor farm, Manor* from Lat. *manus*, to stay or dwell, was originally the dwelling place of the lord; then it came to mean a portion of land kept by the landlord for his own home estate use.

26. *White marble.* A sort of light-coloured free-stone, or crumbling rock.

27. *Wych hazel.* Scott, *Lady of the Lake*, Cant. I. Intr., 2, spells this word *witch* and subsequently has 'wizard-elm,' from the idea that this kind of tree has weird or magical qualities.

28. *Of Ray* = as Mr. Ray describes it.

29. *Lending bough.* One of its principal branches.

34. *Have been such,* i.e., have been planted,—not of chance growth.

P. 47. 1. 2. *Playster.* A corruption of *Play-stor* = play-place, the spot where the children played.

2. *In the midst.* *Midst* is really a contraction for *mid-dest* (part), the superlative of *mid*. It is generally found only in this phrase, *midmost* being adopted instead.

2. *In olden times.* The adjective *olden* is now used only in phrases like this, and always means *by-gone*. The *en*, as in 'wood-en, silver-en, thine (thy-en),' is really an old possessive inflexion.

2. *Overturned it at once.* *At once* here seems to mean 'at one blow,' an unusual use. What does *at once* generally mean? See II., p. 265.

9-10. *To the infinite regret.* Explain the force of *to* here. See II., p. 157.

13-14. *Planted oaks also,* i.e. as well as elms, mentioned above.

14. *Planted this tree &c.* Why this order of words?

18. *Lately furnished,* i.e., in which up to a short time ago was to be found a set of oaks, &c. What else might *lately furnished* mean?

21. *Would measure.* This is a contracted conditional sentence: 'would measure, trial were made.'

27. *At sixty feet,* i.e., if the conditions were placed at sixty instead of fifty feet.

33. *Lyric.* Said to be derived from *Ly* (= egg), and therefore = egg-ery.

89. *Nest upon nest.* *Upon* is not here used of *position* but of *succession*; 'one nest after another.'

40. *It was in the month.* To what does *it* refer? See II., p. 179.

P. 48. l. 3. *Beetle.* A heavy wooden hammer, from the verb *beat*. See H., p. 43.

4. *Nodding to its fall.* Give the force of *to* here.

4. *Sat on.* Give the force of *on* here.

11. *Alive.* Parse: may we say 'an alive fowl?' See H., p. 189.

11. *Upon examination.* Show how the preposition *upon* derives its meaning here from its primary sense.

12. *Till then.* Hilley (419 a) asserts that this phrase 'must not be used in Prose.' This example, one among many, shows that he is incorrect.

14. *A great stroke.* Give other meanings of *stroke*: whence comes this metaphorical meaning?

15. *Ever since.* Parse *ever*.

16. *Eaves.* Is this word really singular or plural? Mention others of the same class.

18. *The summer through.* Observe the order of words. See H., p. 131.

24. *Beat the fields over,* i.e. go over in search of prey. *Beaters* were originally men who *beat* the bushes with sticks to drive out the game. Parse *over*.

24. *Selling dog.* A dog that *sets* up or rouses the game.

X 29. *As far as regards.* What is nominative to the verb *regards*?

30. *Address.* Derive, and give the present and other meanings.

35. *Chancel.* Literally 'a part railed off' (Lat. *cancelli*, rails): the part of a Church where the altar is placed.

37. *Plate.* Derive and give all the meanings.

P. 49. l. 2. *That clamorous hooting.* *That* = which we have all heard.

3. *The wood kinds.* What would 'the wooden kinds' have meant? Parse *wood*.

11. *Remiges.* The technical name for the large, strong feathers of the wings, (from the Latin for *oars*) which are like the oars of a boat.

11. *Species.* What is the plural of this word? Give other similar nouns.

15. *Quarry.* This word must not be confused with others of the same spelling. It is derived through Fr. *curée* from Lat. *cor*, heart; and means originally the heart and entrails of a beast of chase given to the dogs after hunting it; hence, as here, the object of chase or prey. What are the other words?

18. *Pollard.* Derive: give other instances of the suffix *-ard*.

21. *Congeries.* Lat. for *collection*, *heap*.

22. *Had been heaping.* How is *heaping* used here? Give other examples of this usage. See II., p. 97.

28. *Swell as big.* Parse *big*.

29. *Live a full year.* Parse *live* and *year*: no prepositions are understood.

35. *To command.* Give the exact meaning here, with other examples.

37. *Hirundines.* The swallow-tribe.

P. 50 l. 5. *Worth inquiring.* Parse *inquiring*.

7-8. *Of a summer evening.* Account for this use of *of*. What is the preposition usually employed in such phrases? See H., p. 152.

9-10. *Were it not for.* For what does the pronoun *it* stand here?

12. *Dipterons*. 'Double-winged:' derive.  
 15. *Subulated*. 'Tapering like an awl' (Lat. *subula*, an awl).  
 21. *Eticways*. Derive: not from *side* and *way*.  
 25. *Curious*. 'Careful in research:' give the more usual meanings.  
 27. *Pupa*. One stage in the growth of an insect; = *chrysalis*.  
 35. *Monography*. 'A special treatise on a particular subject:' generally written *monograph*: derive. Give other words containing the Gk. root *mon*.

P. 51. l. 6. *Nidification* = nest-building. These letters, being a scientific enquiry into the nature and habits of birds, naturally contain many Latin and Latin-derived words, Latin being the language most generally known and therefore best adapted for scientific subjects.

6-7. *To recruit*. Give other verbs which may be used like *recruit*, transitively, intransitively, and reflexively.

7. *If they do migrate*. What is the force of the auxiliary *do* here?

8. *Its true tone*. Give the exact meaning of *true* here: also in 'a *true* copy,' 'a *true* friend,' 'a *true* Christian,' 'a *true* bill.' Also derive and give the force of *tone* here.

13-14. *Wrought together*. How does *wrought* generally differ from *worked*?

14. *Straws*. Why is the plural used here?

21-22. *Face of the brick*. Give the exact meaning of *face* here: also of the expressions 'to put a good *face* upon anything,' 'to fly in the *face* of providence' 'to *face* a dead end,' 'to have the *face* to.'

23-24. *Providence...prudence*. Both these words are from the same root (what is it?): account for the difference in form and give examples of similar words. See H., p. 50, § 24.

25. *After its own manner*. Give other instances of this use of *after*. See H., p. 145.

40. *Will breed on*. What is force of *on* here?

P. 52. l. 23. *Presently*. 'After a short time,' 'soon.' See note, p. 29. l. 15.

25. *By clinging*. Observe that the preposition *by* with the verbal noun is used only when the means *towards* an action is expressed. Thus 'he by weeping went along the road' should be 'he went weeping along the road.' The two forms are often confused by the Indian student.

29. *Sleight*. 'Clever feat:' not now often used except in the phrase 'sleight of hand.' Observe the order of the words: not 'a so quick.'

39. *The first flight is pretty well over*. The first family of young is so far advanced as to be ready to be left to itself.

40. *Altogether* &c. What two meanings might this sentence have, and which has it here?

P. 53. l. 8. *By ten days*. Give the exact force of *by* here. See H., p. 147.

14. *To a north-east*. *To* = towards: or, perhaps, = *on to*, or *against* (a wall with) a north-east aspect.

21. *An house*. Many instances occur in the English Bible and other old writings of *an* before words in which the initial *h* is sounded, e.g. 'an help-meet,' 'an bell.' In the oldest English *an* was used before all consonants. Many modern writers say 'an hundred.' *An* is still used before the aspirate in words accented on the second syllable; as, 'an hotel.'

24. *Too shallow*. Give the full force of *too* here: would 'very shallow' give exactly the same sense here?

25. *Every hard rain*. An adverbial phrase of time, like 'every day,' and therefore no preposition is needed.

27. *Piteous*. What other meanings has this word? What two meanings has *pitiful*?

28. *Generis lapsi* &c. 'To patch the ruins of their fallen house:' from Virgil, Georg. iv.

82. *Nay*. Give the full force.

82. *Affect*. Derive, and explain its present meaning.

P. 54. l. 5. *They breed the latest*. What part of the sentence is 'the latest'?

6. *On to October*, i.e. they continued to breed until October, without intermission.

18. *Aits*. Webster says this is a contraction of *islet*.

X 17-18. *To have been gone*. The use of the auxiliary *be* with verbs of motion points to a state: 'to have gone' would be quite correct English here, but would point to the action of going.

19. *With us*. Give the full force of *with* here. See II., p. 163.

21. *Congeners*. Another technical Latin word; = 'those of the same genus.'

X 20. *They are no songsters*. Observe this use of *no*. It is equivalent in meaning to an adverb of strong negation, *not at all*, *not in any degree*. The Scotch use *no* for *not*: 'I am no sure.' Give the history of the suffix *-ster*.

82. *Many years' observation*. Observe the possessive inflexion with a neuter noun of time. See II., p. 70.

82. *Not but*. The usual expression is 'not but that.' Parse *but* and give the full force of the phrase.

85. *Fall out*. There are many idiomatic expressions into which the verb *fall* enters: 'to fall—among, away, from, foul of, off, in with, out with, to, short of, under' &c. Write down their meaning.

P. 55. l. 1. *Particular*. An unusual use of the word, = 'worth special notice.'

4. *A circumstance this*. Observe the order of words.

6. *Hibernaculum*. Another technical Latin word, = *winter abode*.

18. *Except they are*. *Except* used as a conjunction, = *unless*. Hiley (488, d.) calls this a misuse. It is not very common.

19. *This hirundo* = this species of the genus *hirundo*.

20. *Stacks*. Give other meanings of *stack* and of *shaft*.

22. *Immediate shaft*. Give the exact meaning.

83. *Fine grasses*. What is the meaning of *fine* here? See II., p. 251. Why *grasses* and not *grass*?

P. 56. l. 8. *When hovering*. There is no noun to which this participial phrase can be referred. It would be more accurate to make it a sentence, 'when she is hovering.'

15. *For a day or so*. For about a day, perhaps a little more, perhaps less.

19-20. *To take their own food*. *To take* here = to catch or capture: not as in the common Anglo-Indian phrase, 'I have not taken my breakfast.' See II., p. 260.

P. 57. l. 2. *Mandibles*. Technical for *jaws*.

4. *Exemplar*. Latin for sentinel. Derive.

6. *An hawk*. See the note above on '*an heave*' p. 53. l. 21.

7. *Calls all the swallows and martins about him*. *About him* must be connected with the verb: = '*Calls them to come round him.*'

14. *Washes on the wing* = Washes while in the act of flying.

27. *Blows hard*. Parse *hard*.

29. *Coleoptera*. The scientific name for that order of insects that have four wings, two of which form a horny sheath for the other pair: e.g. beetles.

32. *To a bird*. Give the exact force of *to* and of *a* here.

P. 58. l. 6. *στροφή* Greek for *mother's love*, and pronounced *storgē*.

10. *Mus hare* [had]. In some editions the *had* is omitted, though without it the sense is altered. What is the effect of leaving out *had*?

16. *Worthy the most elegant*. Observe that *worthy* as well as *worth* may be used with no preposition after it, though *worthy of* is more common. *Elegant* was a word very popular in the last century: it here = '*excellent*,' '*complete*.' The word *nice* has a similar popularity in this century.

25. *Taken the least out of its way*, i.e. '*if placed in at all unusual circumstances.*' Cp. '*a very out of the way proceeding.*'

29-30. *The brute creation*. *Creation* should mean '*the act of creating*:' what does it mean here? What is meant by an *abstract noun*?

36. *Discovering*. What two meanings has this word? and which here?

P. 59. l. 5. *To instance in sheep*, i.e. to quote the case of sheep as an instance of this peculiarity.

9. *From a little fawn*. Such phrases as this are not uncommon, though *from* should, strictly speaking, be joined to an abstract noun representing state or condition: e.g. *From a boy* = *from boyhood*. This is an exactly opposite usage to that above of *creation* (abstract) for *created things* (concrete).

10. *A-field*. Explain this prefix. See H., p. 101.

20. *On a time*. Give the modern form. Cp. '*Once upon a time.*' See H., p. 154.

25. *An apparent regard*. What ambiguity is there in the meaning of the word *apparent*? Either meaning would give good sense here; but the meaning seems to be clearly visible.

24. *Began to take*. An old fashioned use of the word *take* in the sense of '*to spring up.*' Cp. '*the house took fire.*'

33. *Twenty years ago*. Webster says *ago* is a form of *agone* (found in the *Observer* and in provincial English) = *y-gone*, the old past participle of the verb *go*. It is more probably the past part. of an O. E. verb *agann*, to go by, elapse.

34. *From a child*. Another instance of *concrete* for *abstract*: = '*from childhood.*'

P. 60. l. 1. *Of this cast*. *Cast* = *mould, shape*, cp. '*cast-iron*;' thence *sort, class*: not the same as *caste*, which is a Spanish word.

6. *All alert*. Parse *all*.

7. *Humble-bees*. *Humble* here has nothing to do with the adjective meaning *lowly*: it is taken from *hum*, the noise a bee makes. See H., p. 53.

9. *He would seize*. Observe that the form '*would seize*,' is applied to action repeated at intervals not to continuous and systematic action, which is expressed by *used to*. See H., p. 255. '*He would seize*' = '*He used occasionally to seize*

when he got the chance." It is really a conditional sentence with the *if*-clause suppressed: 'He would seize (if he could).'

13-14. *A very merops*. Give the full force of *very* and parse it.

19. *Metheglin*. Literally *honey-liquor*, = *mead*.

19. *Was making*. Explain this use of *making*. See note, p. 82. l. 27.

X — *Thou &c*. An imitation of Verg. *Æneid* vi, where is foretold what might have been the renown of Marcellus, had he not died young.

— *Wildman*. The author, or supposed author, of a celebrated treatise on bees.

20. *From hence*. We have many instances of double forms like this: cf. *worser, lesser* [which however are not, strictly speaking, double comparatives], *very best, of yours, &c.*: See note, p. 3. l. 4.

30. *As I understand*. 'As I am informed:' *understand* is not employed in its usual sense of *comprehending*. Cp. 'I am given to understand.'

## PRESCOTT'S CONQUEST OF MEXICO.

Page 61, line 1. *Expediency*. Derive and explain. How does it differ in meaning from 'expedition'?

4-5. *To retreat on Tlascala*. Explain this use of *on*.

3. *Council*. Show the difference of meaning between this word and 'counsel.'

7. *Causeway*. A disguised word. See H., p. 58.

13. *In comparative security*. Explain: 'comparative' here is opposed to 'absolute.'

14. *Main land*. For 'main' see H., p. 173.

16, 32. *The day-time . . . for the rest*. Turn this passage into the Direct Speech, giving the exact words of those who used these arguments.

21. *A thousand*. Indefinite: = a large number: see H., p. 76.

26. *The late . . . operations*. What does 'late' mean here? what other meaning has it?

31. *Once* = Bengali এক বার. Give other meanings. See H., p. 265.

P. 62. l. 3. *Astrology*. Derive. How does it differ in meaning from 'astro-nomy'? Compare *chemistry, alchemy*. Mention other words into which either of the two roots of 'astrology' enters.

5. *Hits*. Show how the meaning here comes from the primary meaning.

5. *Calculation*. Derive.

7. *Means*. Give other words that are used only in the plural.

12. *The feature*. What is the force of the definite article here?

19. *That very night*. Parse and state the force of 'very.'

24. *Royal fifth*.  $\frac{1}{5}$  of the spoil, set apart by law for the king.

30. *To transport*. Parse.

37. *He travels*. Observe the strictly demonstrative force of 'he' here = 'that man.'

P. 63. l. 2. *The very mines*. Has 'very' the same meaning here as in 'that very night,' above?

9. *Two hundred...foot.* Mention other nouns that have two meanings in the singular. See H., p. 67.

20. *Pretty equally.* Parse and give the meanings of 'pretty.'

21-22. *His immediate command.* See note, p. 104. l. 38.

30. *Was to be taken up.* See H., p. 124, (c).

P. 64. l. 12. *Too plainly.* What is the force of 'too' here? See H., p. 264.

51. *Took the alarm.* Observe that 'alarm' takes the article when it is used with its original sense of 'a call to arms,' 'a rousing to action,' but we say 'filled with alarm,' without any article, where it simply means 'fear,' 'apprehension.'

83. *Tecallis.* Lit. houses of God; temples.

37. *No time was to be lost.* No time could be lost consistently with their safety. See H., p. 124, (a).

40. *Chivalry* = 'cavalry.' What is the usual meaning? Mention other similar words that appear under two or more forms. See H., p. 50, § 24.

P. 65. l. 9. *Fell...faster.* Parse 'faster.'

12. *All at once.* Parse 'all.'

20-21. *Their good swords* = Trusty, serviceable: so 'his good steed' below. See H., p. 177.

21. *Headlong.* See H., p. 109.

23-24. *Marching... on a front &c.* i.e. they marched in successive rows of 15 or 20 men.

39-40. *Many of them slain.* What is the construction?

P. 66. l. 12. *Swimming their horses.* 'Swim' is causative here. See H., p. 91.

15. *Followed pellmell.* Parse and derive *pellmell*.

30. *Showed faint.* Parse 'faint.'

P. 67. l. 26. *Kept in the advance.* Observe that the article here turns the abstract noun into the concrete: *the advance* = *the front position*.

31. *In the thick.* Adjective used as noun; = in the thickest part. So 'the first grey' in the next line.

P. 68. l. 1. *To and fro.* Fro = from. See H., p. 150.

2. *The eye.* Could the article have been omitted?

4. *Volcanic glass.* A dark transparent mineral, very hard, called *obsidian*.

9. *A hard fight.* See note, p. 105. l. 21.

18-19. *The pieces,* i.e. the field-pieces, cannon. See note, p. 78, l. 40.

33. *At a leap.* Notice the preposition. See H., p. 145, (8).

34. *Stupid.* Stupified, dumb-struck.

P. 69. l. 7. *A few only.* What does *only* qualify?

13. *To a man.* Give exact meaning. See H., p. 157.

18. *But little.* Parse.

18. *Broken files.* Derive *files*, and distinguish between it and the other word spelt like it.

38. *Too plainly.* Explain this use of *too*.



P. 70. l. 10. *Once the capital.* What is the meaning of 'once' here? See note, p. 107. l. 85.

18. *Azotens.* Flat roofs of the houses, surrounded by stone parapets.

27. *Commanded.* See note, p. 43. l. 8.

30. *For the moment.* What is the force of the def. art. here? what would for a moment' have meant?

32. *If he would save* = If he wished to save.

P. 71. l. 2. *Ample accommodations.* How would the character of the noun be changed if it were used in the singular, as 'ample accommodation?'

6. *Quantity of fuel.* Singular. 'Fuels' would have meant different sorts of fuel. See II., pp. 65, 246.

8-9. *In dressing... wounds.* Give the exact meaning of 'dress' here: and in 'to dress leathers,' 'to dress meat.'

20, 22. *Where now were... madman?* Change these sentences from the interrogative form into the form of a statement, retaining the meaning. How does the word *now* come to be used with a *past* tense?

P. 72. l. 6. *Cortes' own letter.* Possessive ending omitted;—why? See II., p. 69.

15. *Taking* = adopting as true.

19. *Missing.* With passive sense. See II., p. 93.

21. *Few of whom.* What would have been the meaning of 'a few of whom?'

27. *Which, with previous losses.* What is the antecedent to *which*?

31-32. *To posterity at least.* Give the full force of *at least*.

33, 35. *Ammunition... were all gone.* Why is the plural verb used here?

P. 73. l. 4-5. *Persons of consideration.* Give the literal meaning and the force here.

## PRESCOTT'S LIFE OF CHARLES V.

P. 74. l. 1. *The Emperors' dwelling.* What other meaning might this phrase have, if *dwelling* were an abstract noun?

8. *Twenty-five feet long.* Hilley (424 c.) says that phrases like this are incorrect, and that the correct form is 'twenty-five feet in length.' But he is in error. Either form is correct, and the former much the more usual. *Parso feet.* See II., p. 111.

9. *By twenty broad.* Explain this use of *by*.

10. *Porticos.* What is the rule for the formation of the plural of nouns in *o*?

21. *Parterres.* A naturalized French word; = ornamental beds or plots.

25. *Light and tasteful.* Give the various meanings of the word *light*, according as it is cognate to the Latin *lux* or *lucis*. Which is it here?

P. 75. l. 1. *Against which.* In contact with which. See II., p. 143.

6. *Cabinet.* Give the various meanings of this word.

10-11. *Must have been dark and dreary with no light.* 'Must have been here' = 'could not be otherwise than : ' 'with no light' = 'considering that they had no light.'

19-21. *Sierra ... Savanna.* Explain.

19-20. *Chestnut and oak.* Why is the singular used?

23. *Had an eye for.* Took an interest in looking at. 'To have an eye to' = to pay attention to.

23. *The beautiful.* Explain.

25. *He would frequently.* The form of the verb with *will* and *would* is often used to express *indefinite repetition* without any idea of futurity. Is there anything like this in Bengali? See II., p. 255.

29. *Travelling.* To what rule of spelling is this word an exception? Give instances of other words similarly opposed to the rule.

33. *In vogue.* *Vogue* is obsolete except in this phrase. It is said to be connected with *waggon* and to mean *a mode of going on, a fashion.*

37-38. *With all this.* Give the force of *with* here.

40. *Was on him.* A phrase often used of an ailment; sometimes metaphorically, as 'while the fit was on, he was eager to learn.'

P. 76. l. 2. *In keeping with.* Give the full force of *keeping* here.

10. *Fetched.* Produced, been sold for. How does *fetch* differ from *bring in* usage?

10. *Reals.* A Spanish coin: derived from *royal*, as the English coins, *sovereign* and *crown*, are connected with royalty: = about 4 annas.

10. *Wardrobe.* What is the usual rule about the formation of compound words of this order? Show how *wardrobe* is an exception to the rule. The word came into English from the French *garde-robe*, which accounts for its exceptional formation.

36. *No less than sixteen.* Grammarians assert that '*less*' should be used only of *size*, while for *number* '*few*' is the word. But *less* implies deficiency of any kind and is not radically connected with *little*, which applies only to *size*. Thus we may say '*a less number*,' but not '*a little number*.'

P. 77. l. 11-12. *Of a more elaborate workmanship.* This phrase would not be rendered incorrect by the omission of the article. Would there, in that case, be any difference in the meaning?

26. *The service of his oratory.* Explain this use of the word *service*.

34-35. *Working the precious metals.* *Work* is often used in the sense of *elaborate configuration*: cp. '*a prettily worked table cloth*:' the meaning is different in '*to work a silver mine*,' and in '*wrought iron*.'

P. 78. l. 1. *Had their showy parts to play.* Would there be any change in meaning if the order were altered to '*had to play their showy parts*?'

5. *The proud Burgundian order.* Explain.

16. *Styptics.* Sometimes written *stiptic*, from the Greek *stuphein*, to contract.

18. *Bezoar.* From Persian *bdd*, = wind, and Arabic *zahr*, = poison: a stone supposed to blow away or expel poison.

20. *It may surprise.* What part of the sentence is it here?

26. *Be set down to superstition.* Explain the force of *set down to*.

20. *Best instructed men.* This should strictly be written *best-instructed*, *best* being an adverb qualifying *instructed*.

32-33. *The abdicated monarch.* The participle in *ed* is generally said to be *passive*, but in this and other instances, such as '*landed property*,' '*a retired tradesman*,' we see that it is used to express a state, without any passive force. Such cases, however, are comparatively exceptional: a *failed candidate* (= a candidate who has failed) is un-English. See II., p. 262. Cp. note, p. 103. l. 57.

40. *Altar-piece.* Cp. '*A piece of plate*,' above, and '*a piece of mechanism*,' below: so also '*a piece of music*,' '*a field-piece*,' '*a fowling-piece*,' '*a time-piece*,' '*a piece of information*,' '*a piece of insolence*,' &c. The radical idea is of something separate and distinct.

P. 79. l. 4-5. *For a crowned head.* Explain this use of *for*. See II., p. 149.

10-11. *Should be served*, i.e. 'ought to be served': what other meaning might *should* have?

15. *A yearly pension on.* The force of *on* here seems = *chargeable on*.

21-22. *It was by his pencil that &c.* Turn this into the unemphatic form.

27-28. *By the same master.* 'Master' is often thus used absolutely: cp. '*the old masters*,' (= painters).

P. 80. l. 2. *The sainted being.* *Sainted* is often used as a conventional polite phrase for *dead*: cp. Lat. *diuus*.

8. *Passages in the life.* Occurrences, events: used more frequently by older writers.

22. *Was indeed his preceptor.* What is the force of *indeed* in the argument here?

24. *Gownsmen*, i.e. priests, lawyers, &c. The term is still used at English universities as opposed to townsmen or citizens.

31. *History at least.* Expand *at least* into a sentence, giving its full force.

P. 81. l. 8-9. *Great success in its way.* Give the force of '*in its way*' here; also in '*you are standing in its way*.'

12. *The more so. ... that.* Parse *the* and *that*.

17. *Did it into* = Turned it into.

18. *Set Castilian verse.* *Set* = 'regular, formal';—how?

28. *Entering the Church.* A common, but inaccurate, expression, meaning 'taking holy orders,' or 'becoming a priest.'

30. *Satisfied of this.* Give the meaning, and show how it differs from '*satisfied with this*.'

P. 82. l. 12-13. *But for all that.* Explain this use of *for*. See II., p. 149.

26. *Struck off.* See II., p. 154.

29. *A wicked wag.* *Wicked*, used in a mild sense, = roguish, playfully mischievous.

P. 83. l. 28. *Men of family*, i.e. of good family, of high birth. See H., p. 140, § 16.

P. 84. l. 9. *The same yearly stipend with that.* *Same* may be followed by the relative *as*, the conjunction *as*, or the preposition *with*, as here: but not by *which*.

23-24. *The man of all others.* Is this expression logically correct? If not, emend it.

81-82. *Daily increasing value.* This should properly be written *daily-increasing*, as above, *best-instructed*.

87. *Hard pushed for.* Parse *hard*, and give the exact meaning of the phrase: also of 'a pushing man,' 'to make a push for,' 'when it comes to the push.'

89. *On the faith.* Give the meaning of the preposition, and illustrate by examples. See H., p. 155.

P. 85. l. 3-4. *Of that regular kind to have been.* A short form for 'of such a regular kind as to have been.'

4-5. *Atmosphere of a convent.* *Atmosphere* in the sense of 'surroundings:' cp. 'to live in the odour of sanctity.'

14. *Alms.* Is this word singular or plural? See H., p. 68.

19. *Charge.* Give the meaning of this word here, and form sentences to illustrate its other meanings.

26. *Making his profession.* Openly avowing his faith and enrolling himself in the order. Derive *profession* and trace its general meaning back to the root.

82. *Plausible monners.* Derive *plausible*, and show how it comes under the class of words that have *degenerated* in meaning. Give other examples. See H., p. 51.

87. *Received a summons.* *Summons* is singular: cp. *alms* above.

P. 86. l. 1. *At least.* Expand this into a sentence, so as to show its exact force.

5,7. *It was because ... conscience.* Turn into the Direct Speech.

9,12. *For, said he ... Taste.* Turn into the Indirect Speech.

21. *Much the same etiquette.* Observe the position of the adverb,—before the article: but we say 'the very same,' where the adverb is after the article.

27. *San-benito.* From *saccus benedictus* = *blessed sack-cloth coat*, worn by penitent heretics and by criminals condemned to death.

80. *He coolly added.* Give the exact meaning of *coolly*, and show how it applies here.

81. *Change countenance.* Observe the phrase is not 'change *your* countenance.'

83. *The cloth, i.e. the clergy,* as wearing coats of black cloth: cp. *gownsmen* above, and *red-coats*, = soldiers.

83-84. *Cardinal virtue.* Derive *cardinal* and explain its meanings.

84. *If he had resigned.* The *if* here does not imply any doubt of the fact: the meaning is 'granting the fact that he had.'

89. *I would have you know.* Observe that the preposition *to* is not necessary with the infinitive *know* after 'I would have.' Give the exact force of the expression, and turn this speech into the Indirect form.

P. 87. l. 23. *Had a passion for.* Derive *passion* and trace its various meanings back to the root.

85. *Had a turn for.* Had a taste for, a tendency towards.

89-90. *As it would seem.* This is really the second or consequent clause of a conditional sentence: the full suppressed clause is 'if we were able to obtain exact information about his abilities.'

P. 88. l. 14. *Ayudas de camara.* Assistants of the Chamber, like 'gentlemen of the bed-chamber' in England.

19. *As we have seen.* Not = 'of which we have been eye-witnesses;' but, 'as has been before mentioned.'

81. *Beat a hasty retreat.* Metaph. from the beating of a drum: cp. 'to beat a charge,' 'to beat the tattoo,' 'to beat an alarm.'

82. *A false note, i.e.* 'a discordant note;' give the exact force of *false* in 'a false weight,' 'false imprisonment,' 'false jewellery,' 'a false keel.'

86. *He dined... an important meal.* What is the grammatical construction of 'meal'?

89. *Of eating alone.* Parso *alone*.

P. 89. l. 8. *Sancho Panza.* See the novel 'Don Quixote.'

8-9. *Turned on natural history.* For various uses of *turn*, see II., p. 171.

10. *Sovereign authority.* Cp. the phrases 'sovereign influence,' 'a sovereign remedy.' Milton spells this word *sorian*; is he right? See II., p. 61.

15. *A running Commentary.* Explain: also 'a running hand,' 'a running fire,' 'two years running,' 'a running fight,' 'a running account.'

19. *Repaired.* Is this the same word as 'repair' = mend? See II., p. 46.

29. *Had a gift for, i.e.* was gifted or endowed with special ability for.

39-40. *For this exercise.* Give various phrases including *exercise* in different meanings.

P. 90. l. 3. *Sound doctrines.* Give various phrases including *sound* in different meanings. See note, p. 44, l. 23.

## FREEMAN'S OLD ENGLISH HISTORY.

### THE REIGN OF KING ALFRED.

Page 90, line 10-11. *To be able to say.* These two infinitives are not the same: point out the difference between them.

12. *Just because.* What is the meaning of *just* here? Is it the same as in 'May I just look at my book?' Translate this last sentence into your vernacular.

13. *Attributing.* Verbal noun. Show the construction.

21. *Later.* What is the other form of this comparative, and with what different use?

22. *A way of fancying.* Parso *fancying*.

21. *Hit upon.* 'Selected.' Explain this use of *hit*: also 'to hit out,' 'to hit off.'

25. *Putting aside fables.* An absolute phrase, since *putting* has no noun upon which to depend: = 'even if we put aside fables.' The participles *regarding*, *respecting*, *considering*, &c., are similarly used. Cp. II., p. 113, §99.

26. *There have been very few kings &c.* If, in these sentences, we had had 'a very few kings'—'a very few men,' what would have been the difference in the meaning?

29-30. *Set him down.* What other meaning has 'to set a person down'?

81. *Than Alfred did.* Notice that *did* here is used as a substitute for 'gave himself.' What are the other uses of this auxiliary? Cp. II., p. 262.

P. 91. 1. 3. *It is wonderful &c.* What does it refer to?

4. *His powers,* = 'Instances of his power, his abilities.' Abstract nouns, as such, cannot take a plural in English. Cp. II., p. 66.

5. *Is in itself &c.* What is the nominative to *is* in this sentence?

6. *But it is a great thing &c.* Analyze this sentence.

7. *So large a part.* Notice where the article is placed; not, 'a so large part.'

14. *And if he was &c.* *If* has not a conditional force here: = 'taking into account that he was' &c.

19. *To visit.* Parse.

20. *Parts.* Give other meanings. See II., p. 67 (3).

22. *Relations of life,* i.e., social duties and engagements. What other meaning has 'relations'?

22. *In short.* Parse *short*.

22. *One hardly knows.* *One* is indefinite. See II., p. 28.

23. *So perfect.* Hiley in his 'Abridgment' (293) says that "It is incorrect to say '*so perfect*,' since such adjectives as *chief*, *perfect*, *universal* &c. do not admit of qualifying words." In strict logic he is right, but the rule is unnecessary.

24. *No doubt.* Parse.

26-27. *Took away . . . from.* Give exact meaning.

29. *Canonized.* Placed in the *guide-roll* or catalogue of Saints. Greek canon literally means 'a measuring-rod.'

31. *Ælfred,* i.e., the rede or counsel of the *elves*. A great many Old English names are called after the elves or fairies (Author's note).

33. *Came of* = 'was descended from.' In 'What good came of it at last?' (Southey), what is its meaning?

36. *Now a story.* Narrative *now*, introducing a fresh statement. See II., p. 115. Is there any equivalent in your vernacular?

38. *To have to say.* Explain. See II., p. 124.

P. 92. 1. 3. *One day.* Parse.

11-12. *Took the book for his own.* What is the force of *for* here? What other meaning has 'take for,' as in 'He took me *for* his brother.' See II., p. 142.

15. *Four years old.* Cp. II., p. 111 (b).

17. *He would have him taught.* How does this differ in meaning from 'He would have taught him'?

21. *By that time.* Explain the force of *by*. See II., p. 116.

22. *His brothers.* How does *brothers* differ in use from *brethren*?

30. *Even if she were alive,* i.e., even taking it for granted that &c. Compare the non-conditional use of *if* above.

31. *For a child.* For this and other meanings of *for*, see II., p. 148.

P. 93. 1. 2. *Smitten.* Parse. What is the other form of this participle?

2. *Disease.* Derive. Give other instances of words with this prefix.

7. *Of their succeeding.* Parse *succeeding*.

11. *He had at once to fight.* Explain, and express the sentence in your vernacular.

14. *Before the year was out,* i.e., before the year had elapsed. What does 'I was out of writing-paper' mean?

17. *Till long after.* Parse *long*.

18. *Cathedral*. Derive. Mention other words with this prefix.

22-23. *That are to be seen* = 'That can be seen.' What two other meanings might this phrase have? See H., p. 124.

28. *Had the better* = 'was victorious.' Colloquially the superlative is generally used: 'He had the *best* of it.'

30. *But their lives*. Parse *but*. Give sentences illustrating all the uses of *but*.

P. 94. 1.-5. *For fear of*. What is the exact force of *for*?

6. *That is the northern part*. Is *that* here demonstrative or relative?

9. *Very ancient work*. What meaning has *work* here? Give sentences illustrating the use of this word in the plural.

18. *He got there*. The verb *got* here (= 'arrived') points to the great simplicity of the style. State the other uses of *get*. See H., p. 165.

21. *There was some quiet again*. What is the force of *again* here; and what in 'I beat him till he shrieked again'?

27. *Ploughing and tilling*. Parse these two words.

29-30. *By Northumberland*. What force has *by* here?

35. *Few or no*. What three uses has *or*, and which is employed here? See H., p. 116, §103.

39. *Hazby and Thirkleby*. *By* is a Danish ending meaning 'dwelling,' 'farm,' and hence 'village.' What force has the prefix *by* in *by-path*, *by-word*?

P. 95. 1. 8-4. *During these years*. *During* is called an apparent preposition. What is the real construction of the phrase? See H., p. 118, §99.

6. *Is worth remembering*. How would this sentence run, if you used *worthy* instead of *worth*?

14. *It would seem*. A curtailed conditional sentence: complete it. How does it differ in force from 'It seems'?

15-16. *A seafaring people*. *Fare* here = 'to go, travel.' Give the meanings of *fare* in the following: (1) So *fares* the knight between two foes. (2) He *fares* sumptuously every day. (3) So *fares* it when with truth falsehood contends.

17. *To keep up a fleet*. To maintain, preserve in an efficient condition.

21-22. *Wooden walls*. What does this expression mean, and what is its origin?

26. *Which is at once*. Notice the meaning of *at once* here. What is its more usual meaning?

31. *They 'bestole'*. What is the force of the prefix *be* = here? See H., p. 24. Give other examples.

35. *They swore this on, &c. i.e.*, 'placing their hands on the holy bracelet;' or it may mean simply 'by the holy bracelet.' What is the force of the suffix in *bracelet*? Give other instances.

37. *Heathen*. A degenerated word - How? See H., p. 51.

39-40. *For taking it, i.e.*, 'from the fact of their having taken it.' See H., p. 148 (1).

A. *To go 'west about'*. What is the force of *about* here? See H., p. 142 (1).

9. *It is only smaller vessels*. Explain this use of *it*. See H., p. 180 (c).

12. *The two Isca*. *Eux* and *Usk* is the same word under different forms, and *Isca* is the latinized form of both.

13-14. *Has quite gone down in the world.* A common colloquial phrase:— 'has become small and of little account.' What does 'go down' mean in 'This excuse won't go down with me?' See H., p. 165.

19. *The Danish horse.* What meaning has *horse* here? Mention other nouns with two meanings in the singular. See H., p. 67.

26. *Dealt with.* Dr. Freeman, writing of old times, gives an antiquate colouring to his style. We have had above 'bade,' 'smitten,' 'yea.'

35-36. *In the very beginning.* Parse and give the force of *very* here.

36. *Just after.* See note above, p. 80. l. 12.

39. *Nickle* = Many.

40. *The most deal* = The most part.

P. 97. l. 1-2. *Hardly fared [went] after the woods,* i.e., 'escaped with difficulty into the woods.'

2. *Moor-fastnesses.* A *fastness* is 'a fast or firm place, a stronghold.' So *fast* in 'to hold fast' 'stead-fast.'

7-8. *One account which says,* &c. Put the substance of this account into the Direct Speech.

25. *Of it being true.* Notice *it being* here, instead of the more usual *its being*. In the former, *being* must be parsed as a participle, in the latter, as a verbal noun. Many regard the former expression as a corruption of the latter.

26. *Neatherd.* Derive *neat*. See H., p. 43 (note).

37. *Bishoprick.* The modern spelling is *bishopric*. This word forms the only surviving instance of the old English termination *ric*, 'dominion.'

P. 98. l. 7-8. *Of his host.* What does this *host* mean, and is there another word of the same form? See H., p. 45.

9. *Wrought* = 'made, built.' See H., p. 101 (d).

10-11. *Out of that work,* i.e., 'from that work, or fortress, as a centre of operation.'

13. *Eggbrihtestan.* *Egbert's* (Egbert's) *stone*, that is *Brixton Deverell* in Wiltshire (Author's note).

16. *That on this side the sea war.* That is, those who had not fled beyond sea for fear of the Danes (Author's note). 'On this side' is here a prepositional phrase. See H., p. 113 (e).

22. *Eke* = 'also, further.'

25. *Him the king received,* &c. That is, *was his god-father* (Author's note).

26. *His chrisom-losing.* That is, he *laid aside* the *chrisom* or white garment which a newly baptized person wore (Author's note).

30. *The more pleased.* Is this the ordinary definite article? See H., p. 84, §50.

37. *Worked.* 'Woven or embroidered.' Why may we say 'fireworks,' but not 'needle-works'?

P. 99. l. 6. *Begin to mend.* *Mend* is here used intransitively; = to improve.

13. *Island.* This ought properly to be spelt *iland*, since it has no connection with *isle*. See H., p. 55.

13. *To this day.* Down to the present time.

17. *As it were.* This, like 'so to speak,' is an apologetic formula; = *as though* it were so, as though they really did cling.



18. *For building monasteries.* Fill out this sentence, so as to show what part of speech *building* is. See II., p. 97.

29. *Very old and rude.* What is the meaning of *rude* here? Give its other meanings. Cp. note, p. 110. l. 2.

40. *I do not pretend to cry.* What is the force of *pretend* here? Is it the same as in 'He pretended to be ill?'

P. 100 l. 6. *Came to be baptised.* Notice that we have 'at Ailer' not 'to Ailer;' what then must be the meaning of *came* here?

10. *By which.* What is the force of *by*? Compare 'He goes *by* the name of,' 'I know him *by* name.'

10. *Wes to leave, i e.,* 'It was settled in the treaty that he should leave.' In the words of the treaty this would be expressed by 'shall leave.'

16. *Spoken roughly.* Does *roughly* bear the same meaning here as in 'Do not speak *roughly* to your servants?'

22. *Fell to, i e.,* came into the possession of. 'Fall to' is often used with verbal nouns in the sense of 'begin' as, 'He *fell to* drinking out of the jug.'

21. *Immediately.* What is the force of this word here?

29. *One Æthelred.* See II., p. 89.

P. 101. l. 3. *Leader of theirs.* See note, p. 19. l. 10.

26. *To his credit.* Explain. What other meanings has *credit*? Give examples.

30. *Disguise.* What is the force of the prefix *dis*?

40. *Believe for certain.* What force has *for* here? See II., p. 149 (5). Parse *certain*.

## FREEMAN'S NORMAN CONQUEST.

P. 102. l. 2-3. *In both kinds, i e.,* partook of both bread and wine at the communion rite.

4. *Post.* Derive and give all the meanings.

4. *As usual . . . military action.* Give the exact sense of this sentence.

6, 25. *He came . . . to the other.* Turn this reported speech into the Direct form, giving William's exact words. For the rules, see II., p. 125.

10-11. *Defeated . . . conquerors.* Single words, equivalent to what sentences?

18-19. *Mortemer . . . Varaville.* Victories of William over Henry, king of the French, in A.D. 1051 and 1058.

28. *To tarry.* Parse.

P. 103. l. 5. *Mindmost.* *Most* in this word is not the superlative of *more*, but a union of two distinct superlative suffixes *ma* or *m* and *ost*. See II., p. 73.

8. *Many a man.* Explain this phrase grammatically. See II., p. 89.

5. *Failed him.* Parse *him*.

6. *Took seizin.* A law term, = *took possession*. It alludes to William's exclamation on landing when he fell with his hands on the ground: 'Thus have I taken seizin of my kingdom: the earth of England is in my two hands.'

8-9. *Turned about . . . turned from . . . into . . .* How does the meaning of *turned from . . . into* come from the original meaning of *turn* as in *turned about*? See II., p. 171.

13. *The pilgrimage*, i.e., the usual pilgrimage: the article shows that it was a common journey to a well-known shrine.

15. *Mirror of Knighthood*. Explain this metaphor.

18. *Gallant*. Gallant, with accent on first syllable. What does *gallant* mean? See H., p. 65.

21. *Nerer had*. Why this change in the order of words?

26. *Domesday*. Domesday Book, a record of lands and their owners.

37. *Needled*. We are accustomed to regard the inflected form of the past participle as passive. But the rule seems to be that in the case of neuter verbs this form may be used without any passive force, to express a state or condition. Thus we have 'a well-behaved boy,' 'a travelled man,' 'a well-read man.' Show how the last two expressions differ in force from 'a travelled road,' 'a read sermon.'

40. *Craft*. Formerly *craft* meant *strength*; then *skill in a trade*, and thence *the trade itself*: it then got to mean *skill applied to bad purposes, cunning*. Give instances of other words that have deteriorated in meaning. See H., p. 51.

P. 104. l. 6. *In after days*. Here we have an adverb used with the force of an adjective. Hiley (419, 420), says this usage is incorrect. It is common, however, with the most correct writers. See H., p. 102.

9. *All but universally* = in very nearly every instance. Parse *all*.

9. *Parthian*. The cavalry of the ancient Parthians were armed with the bow not the lance. What does 'a Parthian shot' mean?

18. *Harnest*. Now used of the trappings of horses: formerly = armour.

13. *Mere jerkins* = only jerkins (short coats) and nothing else. *Mere* literally means pure, unmixed; Cp. 'clean gone.' *Sheer* (as in 'sheer folly') has the same meaning underlying it.

14. *But a few*. An ambiguous expression, since *but* may mean either *on the other hand* (फ़ज़), or *not more than* (क़रन). The former is probably the meaning intended.

18. *Unlike the practice*, &c. What does this phrase qualify? Parse *practice*.

20. *Kite-shaped*. Like a triangle with an arc for a base: not diamond-shaped as Indian kites are.

21. *In the rest*. The rest was a projection in the armour to support the butt-end of the lance.

26. *Innermost*. See note on *hindmost* above, p. 103. l. 8.

30. *Hollowed into*. Give the force of the preposition here.

33. *Immediate leader*. Derive *immediate* and give its exact force here.

36. *The choicest and central*. Why does he not say 'choicest and most central'?

35. *The words of truth and soberness*. Quoted from the Eng. Bible. See Acts xxvi, 25.

P. 105. *οὔτε* etc.

"Great Areithous known from shore to shore  
By the huge, knotted, iron moor he bore;  
No lance he shook, nor bent the twanging bow,  
But broke with this the battle of the foe."

Hom. II. vii. 141.—*Pope*

4. *Arms him*, i.e., describes him as armed.

7. *Two-handed*. Wielded with both hands. What is the difference in use between *four-foot* and *four-footed*? See H., p. 33, § 14 (b).

10. *Sworn his fatal oath*. Parse *oath*. See H., p. 91, § 62 (c).

21. *Hard by*. Parse *hard* and show how it comes to have its present force. Cp. *fast by* below. Explain '*hard times*,' '*a hard bargain*,' '*hard words*,' '*hard water*,' '*a hard problem*.'

26-27. *Kindred land*. How is Cornwall kindred to Brittany?

P. 106. l. 8. *Only by a younger man*. Only, an adverb, qualifying what?

15-16. *Great Charter*. Provisions of Oxford. Give some account of each of these. See any English History.

16. *Time would fail to tell*. Parse *to tell*. It is not infinitive after *would fail*, as in the phrase, '*Were you to ask him, he would fail to tell you*.'

25. *Noblest son*. Marshal Roger Bigod, Earl of Norfolk, who, in A.D. 1297, defied Edward I. See English History.

27. *Well nigh the only*. Parse *well* and *nigh*.

39. *Each contingent*. How does *contingent* differ in meaning from *contingency*? Derive.

P. 107. l. 4-5. *Were to do*. Give the exact force of the verb *to do* with the gerund. See H., p. 124.

6. *On them followed*. Is there any difference between *on them* and *after them*?

9. *For William's Knights to charge*. *To charge* is here the simple infinitive, = a noun in the nominative case. Is it so in '*O for some knights to charge the foe*'?

12. *Absolute madness*. Derive *absolute* and explain its force here.

14. *Charging him with*. Observe the difference in meaning between *to charge* and *to charge with*.

28. *The English had simply . . . barricades*. Turn this reported speech into the direct form.

32. *It was therefore, &c.* What is the subject and what the predicate of this sentence?

35. *Let them once*. *Once* has three meanings: (1) On one occasion. (2) Formerly. (3) Ever at any time. Here (3).

P. 108. l. 14-15. *Strangely in the confidence*. Who, judging from their tales, must have been in his confidence; a circumstance too strange for belief.

14-15. *In the confidence of*. Give the exact meaning: also of '*to have confidence in*,' '*to be confident of*.'

22. *Churl*. Originally = a rustic labourer; what meaning has it now? Cp. *villain*, *knave*, *boor*.

25. *Prophet after the fact*. It was easy for Norman writers, after seeing the result, to represent Gyrth as having prophesied it previously.

40. *Is of the very lowest*. Give the force of *of* here. See H., p. 151 (2).

P. 109. l. 6. *The very account*. *Very* is here used as an adjective = *very same*. See H., p. 109.

10. *In either army*. *Either* is frequently used in the sense of *both* by the best writers, though Hiley says the usage is incorrect.

13. *Medes*. Herodotus reports that the Medes thought the Greeks at Marathon were mad for opposing them without horse or bow.

33. *To strike down at once*. What mistakes are often made in the use of *at once*? Give its meaning and the sense here.

P. 110. l. 2. *Rudest arms*. What various meanings has *rude* in '*rude health*,' '*rude civilization*,' '*a rude speech*,' '*a rude winter*?'

10-11. *The king's personal following*. *Following* = *followers*, an abstract for a concrete noun. Derive the words *abstract* and *concrete* and give their meaning.

15-16. *Some especially*, i.e., which deserve especial mention.

24. *Canut*. Better known as *Canute*.

30. *No blow*, i.e., the blow of no other sort of weapon.

35. *To after ages*. *To* = for the eyes of.

P. 111. l. 5. *Gonfanon*. Sometimes spelt *Gonfalon*; Italian for *war-flag*.

7. *Eleoclos*. One of the seven warriors that attacked Thebes in the Drama, '*The Seven against Thebes*,' by the Greek poet Æschylus.

12. *Had cloven*. How does this differ from *cleft*? Give other verbs that have two forms of the past participle that differ in usage. See H., p. 101.

19. *Swegen*. Better known as *Sweyn*: he was outlawed for immorality.

28. *Not strictly*. Derive *strictly*, and give its exact force here.

30-31. *And that*. For what is the pronoun *that* substituted?

36. *Had to make*. Is there any distinction between '*I have to do*' and '*I am to do*'?

P. 112. l. 10. *Prime*. From Latin *primus* = first; the hour at which the first religious service for the day was held.

11. *That the first*. *That* is here a conjunction, = when.

24. *Caught it again*. *Again* here partakes of the meaning of *against* and denotes not a repetition but a reversal of the action: thus we have, '*Go and bring me word again*.' Eng. Bible.

28. *Bravado*. A Spanish word, naturalized in English. Give instances of cognate, derived, and naturalized words. See H., p. 8.

P. 113. l. 8. *Rose loud*. Parse *loud*: not an adverb.

3-4. *On either side*. Another instance of *either* = both.

14. *That best*. Parse *best*.

25. *To answer it*. Parse *to answer* and give its exact force here.

26. *Found wanting*. Although *to want* is used as a transitive verb, we may employ the present participle in an intransitive sense: so also we say that a thing is '*missing*.'

28. *But few*. Parse *but*; and give instances of its use as a conjunction, a preposition, and a relative. See H., p. 87.

32. *Carried on*. Is *on* an adverb joined to the verb *carried*, or a preposition governing *that day*?

38. *Answered*. Give the exact meaning here and show how it is derived from the original meaning.

P. 114. l. 6. *A later turn*. Give the exact meaning of *turn* here: also in 'it is my turn,' 'it gave me quite a turn,' 'it gave a new turn to my thoughts,' 'to serve my own turn,' 'one good turn deserves another.'

14. *Bret-wealas*. *Wealas* = foreigners; the Britons were called *Wealas* or *Welsh* because they were foreigners. So *Gal-wealas* = Frenchmen.

21. *The day seemed lost*. *The day* here = *the day of battle*; hence *victory*.

26. *Brihtnoth*. Earl of the East Saxons who fought the Norwegians at Maldon in A.D. 991.

26. *Eadmond*. King of England, who fought the Danes under Canute at Sherstone in A.D. 1016.

P. 115. l. 18. *Roman Legend*. This alludes to the historian Livy's tale of the fight between the three brothers Horatii and the three brothers Curatii.

21-22. *If it might be*. If it were possible for any heart to be loftier than Harold's.

33. *A certain advantage*. Does *certain* here = *decided*, *positive*, or has it the same sense as in 'a certain man said?'

35. *He did deal*. The auxiliary *did* is here introduced in emphatic correlation with the previous *could*; 'he *could* deal and he *did* deal.'

36. *Had so nearly slain*. The verb *slay* is seldom used in prose now-a-days unless to give an air of gravity and elevation to the style. *Kill* is the ordinary word.

P. 116. l. 12. *Metaurus*. Hannibal's brother Hasdrubal was killed at the battle of Metaurus, and his head thrown into Hannibal's camp.

13. *Achilleus*. The great hero of the Trojan war who lost in battle his two friends Patroclus and Antilochos.

23. *Destrier*. Spanish for *war-horse*.

27. *Cenomannian*. William had conquered Maine or Cenomannia and usurped the throne.

37. *Did him*. *Parso him*; it is here emphatic, and refers to Count Eustace.

P. 117. l. 2. *One loss*. *One* is here emphatic: the loss of one particular man, Harold, and of no other.

8. *While the main hopes*. *While* here = *at the time when*: what other meaning might it have?

24. *The late flight*. Give sentences to illustrate this and other meanings of *late*.

36. *Seemingly* = As far as appears from the narrative.

38. *In apparent flight*. *Apparent*, like *certain* above, may have two meanings. What are they?

P. 118. l. 8-9. *Played off upon . . . into full play*. Give the various phrases into which the word *play*, noun or verb, enters. See H., p. 166.

16-17. *To the best advantage*. *To the difficult ground*. *To the west*. Observe the different meanings of the preposition to here. See H., p. 157.

21. *Head over heels*. 'Heels over head' seems the more natural order: account for the collocation. See H., pp. 184, 185.

27. *None the less*. *None* is here used adverbially, = 'not at all.' *This* is not the definite article: what is it?

29. *The main end.* We have already had *by main force, the main body*: give the different meanings of *main*. See H., p. 178.

P. 119. l. 8. *Stood him in good stead.* Parse *him*. *Stead* is obsolete in modern English except in this phrase and in 'in-*stead* of.' See H., p. 188.  
 12. *Dealt in.* Give the exact meaning here: also of *deal with out, with, by*.  
 27. *The last stage.* In what sense is *stage* here used? Give all its other meanings.  
 35. *Strangs to say.* *To say* is here the gerund.  
 37. *Conduct.* *Conduct* is used in a sense nearly allied to its original meaning of guidance: = 'skilful generalship.'

P. 120. l. 16. *Smote at.* *Smote* is another of those antique words, like *slain* above, now generally confined to poetry.  
 15-16. *Through and through.* We have many such double phrases in English to express repetition or thoroughness; as, *out and out, by and by, over and over*.  
 28. *His heart failed him.* The fact of the intransitive verb *fail* taking a dative after it often misleads the student into considering it an active verb, 'cause to fail.'

P. 121. l. 3. *Characteristic at least.* Typical of the general style of the proceedings, even if not actual occurrences.  
 8. *To tell on.* Give the exact force: also of *to tell against, to tell of*. See H., p. 170.

9. *To bear up.* Give exact meaning.  
 12. *It may well have been, &c.* This sentence is somewhat confused. Split it up into two shorter and clearer sentences.  
 12-13. *In sheer relief.* Derive and explain *sheer*. See note, p. 104. l. 18.  
 20. *Not a man.* *A* is used here in its original meaning, = *one*. So in 'a day or two.'

28. *Drawing in.* Give the exact meaning and explain.  
 80. *Livelong.* What is there peculiar about the collocation of this word? See H., p. 189. Is the last half of this word the same as that of *headlong*?  
 37. *The supreme moment.* Give the usual meaning of *supreme* and its force here.

P. 122. l. 5. *Bolt from heaven.* The old meaning of *bolt* was arrow as in 'a fool's bolt is soon shot': thus, *thunder-bolt* = *thunder-arrow*.  
 17. *Despatched.* Give other meanings.  
 21. *His old exploit.* He had butchered some citizens at Dover for refusing him admittance. The word *exploit* is used ironically.

P. 123. l. 4. *Turned on.* *Turn on* has two meanings; as in 'he turned on him like a tiger,' and as here.  
 9. *That day's battle.* What is the rule about the limitation of the possessive inflexion 's? See H., p. 70.  
 17. *To a man.* Give the exact force of *to* here.  
 17. *Quarter.* Derive and explain: what meaning has this word in the plural? Give other words whose meaning in the plural differs from that of the singular.  
 18. *Comitatus.* The Latin term used by the Chroniclers for *personal following*.  
 22. *By his royal nephew.* *By* is here used of position (= *near*), not of agency.  
 31. *Staller.* Standard-bearer.

P. 124 l. 1. *Two traitors.* Their names have been preserved: 'Godric and Godwig, sons of Odds,' who stole their lord's horses and fled like cowards from the fight of Maldon.

28. *Mal-josse, i.e.,* the evil or disastrous ditch.

86. *As it was.* For what does the pronoun *it* stand here? See H., p. 180, II (1).

P. 125. l. 3. *Only a matter of time.* Give the exact meaning.

14. *Of her handing over.* Observe the gerund of active form used to express a passive meaning. See H., p. 93.

16. *The will of God.* An old expression implying that man was powerless to resist what was done, since God had decreed his ruin.

## EXTRACT FROM HOLMES'S "GUARDIAN ANGEL."

[ This extract is inserted as an example of familiar, conversational English. ]

Page 125, line 20-21. *He was fairly himself again, i.e.,* when he had sufficiently recovered from his fainting-fit. For *fairly*, see H., p. 176 (5).

21-22. *He took it up* = he went on after what he had previously written.

24. *An ugly blow.* A disfiguring, and hence, a severe blow.

25. *'In mourning,' i.e.,* he had a pair of black eyes; they were discoloured by bruises.

25. *Gentlemen of the ring.* Prize-fighters or wrestlers, and their associates.

'The ring' is also used for 'the betting-ring' at horse-races.

27. *'An adventure! . . . any time.'* Turn this passage into the Indirect Speech. See H., p. 125.

27. *Just.* See note, p. 90, l. 12.

30. *Laid me up.* What force has *up* here. Give the meanings of *lay* with out, in, by, about one, to.

P. 126. l. 3-4. *For any time.* The emphasis is on *time* not on *any*: = 'for any length of time.'

6-10. *Oh dear! . . . he would.* Give Susan Possey's exact words.

18. *Letter in hand.* Notice the omission of *the* and *her*.

24. *A good half-hour's.* See H., p. 178 (6).

32. *Grave as it was.* Notice the meaning of *as* in this position. See note, p. 34, l. 19.

P. 127. l. 5. *On short rations.* Observe the pregnant force of *on*.

15. *Need of hiding.* What other construction might we have had here after *need*?

24. *He will come all right.* Colloquial for 'He will become well again, he will recover.'

28. *I'll tell you what.* What is here indefinite: = something.

32. *To have a long time of it* = 'to be ill a long time.' Notice the idiom.

32. *Why.* A common colloquialism. What is its force?

37. *That's a good child, i.e.,* if you come, that will be being a good child.

P. 128 l. 6, 14. 'A young person . . . at any rate.' Write down Mr. Dyles Gridley's thoughts in the Indirect Speech, and expand them in the process.

7. *Why not say. Parse say.*

31. *On his head.* 'On the head' would, perhaps, be more idiomatic; similarly we might substitute 'He is in bed' above. See II., p. 85 (5), and p. 252.

P. 129 l. 5. *Came to* = recovered.

23. *Fatigue.* Employed humorously for *injury, wear and tear.*

26. *Just to fill in with.* Explain.

P. 130. l. 30. *Looked her in the face.* Notice the idiom. See II., p. 129, § 1.

P. 131. l. 1. *Safe and sound.* Observe the collocation.

14. *To be lost.* Can you justify the substitution of the active form, 'to lose,' here? See II., p. 52, § 65.

20-21. *Tell her own story.* Explain the meaning. May we similarly say 'your good news' for 'good news of you?' See II. p. 253, § 25.

27. *It seemed too probable.* What is the force of *too* here? See II., p. 264, § 68.

P. 132. l. 1-2. *Of good family . . . of good name.* Have these two goods precisely the same meaning? See II., p. 178.

4. *For meeting,* i.e., for assembling for religious worship.

7. *Blow over.* Explain the metaphor.

14. *Fellows.* A quasi-colloquial use of the word, as we say 'He is a strong fellow.'

14, 18. *Fellows with lime . . . combinations.* Turn the metaphor that runs through this passage into the corresponding simile.

22-23. *His complement.* His completion, that which should supply any deficiency in him. Compare the phrase 'one's better half,' of a wife.

26. '*Heft.*' An American colloquialism. Lit. = 'weight,' from *heave*; and so, 'quality,' character.

P. 133. l. 9. *Body.* Colloquial (= 'person'), when thus used separately from any or every.

15. *Fitted in* = dressed in.

21-22. *It was all over with.* See II., p. 157 (4).

27-28. *It all came over her,* i.e., she awoke to a sense of what she supposed was the state of affairs; viz., that &c.

P. 134. l. 9. *Out of her head* = mad. So, 'out of one's mind, senses.'

10. *They might be.* *Might* here carries with it an implied notion of *ought*.

24. *Brought to.* Give the meaning, comparing 'came to' above. We may also say 'to come round,' 'to bring round.' What is the meaning of 'The ship was brought to?'



HINTS  
ON THE  
STUDY OF ENGLISH  
BY  
ROWE AND WEBB.

Demy Octavo. Price Rs. 2-8.

—o:—

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"In the work before us, Messrs Rowe and Webb have produced what, for the special purpose for which it is intended,—viz., the instruction of native and Eurasian students,—is by far the best manual of the English language we have yet seen."—*Englishman*.

"Altogether we consider the work is about the only successful attempt we know of to make the 'Queen's English' intelligibly attainable in all its shapes to Natives, and does credit to the authors."—*Indian Daily News*.

"We are happy in being able to give the work very great praise, and . . . we can assure its authors that they have contributed in no mean degree to the accurate study of English in our University."—*Friend of India*.

"It is a useful book exactly suited to the wants and comprehension of Indian pupils, and it ought to be employed as a text-book in every school and college in Bengal. To teachers, as well as to boys, it will be an invaluable companion and guide."—*Indian Mirror*.

"This is a very useful publication, and ought to prove a valuable help to the teachers and pupils in our English Schools . . . It has been prepared with great care and with special reference to the requirements of the Indian student."—*Hindu Patriot*.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

"So far as it goes, this is one of the most satisfactory books of the kind that we have seen. No point touched upon is shunned over; a great deal of matter is condensed into a small compass, and at the same time expressed in a simple, easy style. . . . Taking it as a whole, this is a scholarly little work; and as such, its usefulness will not be limited to one small class of students."—*Times of India*.

"Taking them as a whole, the 'Hints on the study of English' are exceedingly useful, and may be studied with profit by aspirants for University honours and distinctions."—*Indo-European Correspondence*.

"We can strongly recommend these excellent 'Hints on the Study of English' to the native students. . . . The mistakes commonly made by natives are pointed out and illustrated, and then the idiomatic use of words is most fully and carefully explained and exemplified, so that the student, who has really mastered this chapter, will have no one to blame but himself if, from want of practice, he is unable to correct these errors."—*Madras Times*.

"Messrs. Rowe and Webb have thoroughly grasped not only the relations between the English tongue and other tongues, but the fact that there is an English tongue. . . . We are thoroughly glad to see Native Indian students of English taught the history and nature of our language in a way in which, only a few years back, no one would have been taught at home."—*Saturday Review* (London).